



ROUTLEDGE

Cassettes
available

C O L L O Q U I A L

CROATIAN AND SERBIAN

The Complete Course for Beginners

Celia Hawkesworth



The Colloquial Series

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Albanian	Italian
Amharic	Japanese
Arabic (Levantine)	Korean
Arabic of Egypt	Latvian
Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia	Lithuanian
Basque	Malay
Bulgarian	Norwegian
* Cambodian	Panjabi
* Cantonese	Persian
* Chinese	Polish
Croatian and Serbian	Portuguese
Czech	Romanian
Danish	* Russian
Dutch	Slovak
English	Slovene
Estonian	Somali
French	* Spanish
German	Spanish of Latin America
* Greek	Swedish
Gujarati	* Thai
Hindi	Turkish
Hungarian	Ukrainian
Indonesian	* Vietnamese
	Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.

* Accompanying CDs are also available.

Colloquial
**Croatian and
Serbian**

The Complete Course
for Beginners

Celia Hawkesworth



London and New York

First published 1998
by Routledge
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

© 1998 Celia Hawkesworth

Typeset in Times Ten by Florencetype Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon
Printed and bound in Great Britain by Clays Ltd, St. Ives PLC
The author has asserted her moral rights in accordance with Section 77 of
the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced
or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means,
now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording,
or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in
writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Hawkesworth, Celia,

Colloquial Croatian and Serbian : the complete course /

Celia Hawkesworth.

p. cm. – (Colloquial series)

ISBN 0-415-16131-2 (pb). – ISBN 0-415-16132-0 (cass.). –

ISBN 0-415-16133-9 (pack)

1. Serbo-Croatian language—Textbooks for foreign
speakers—English. I. Title.

PG1239.5.E5H29 1997

491.8'282421—DC21 96-52544

ISBN 0-415-16131-2 (book)

ISBN 0-415-161320 (cassettes)

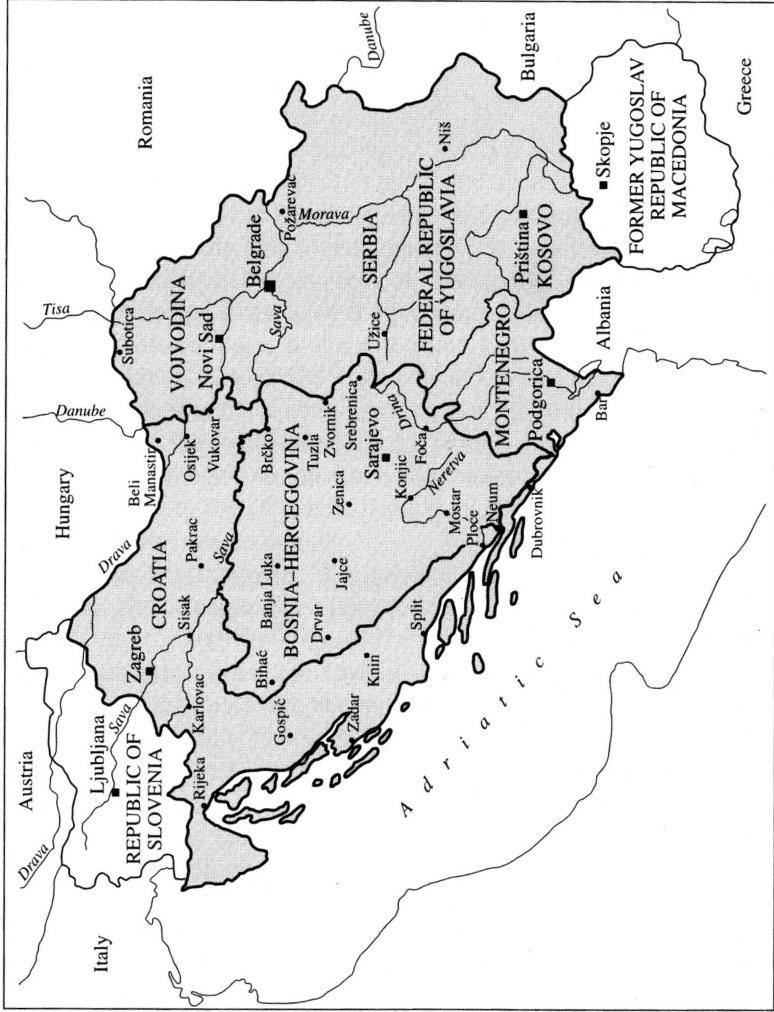
ISBN 0-415-161339 (pack)

Contents

Map of the Croatian, Serbian and Bosnian linguistic area	vii
About this book	1
Table of pronunciation and the alphabets	6
1 Na putu	7
On the way	
2 Razgovor o putovanju	18
Conversation about travelling	
3 Dolazak u Zagreb	28
Arrival in Zagreb	
4 Svatko ide na svoju stranu	39
Each goes his own way	
5 Dolazak u hotel	52
Arrival at the hotel	
6 Razgovor o stanu	64
Conversation about a flat	
7 U restoranu	74
In the restaurant	
8 Na ulici	85
In the street	
9 Posjet prijateljima	98
Visit to friends	
10 Obiteljski odnosi	108
Family relationships	
11 Putni planovi	121
Travel plans	

12 Na pošti	130
At the post office	
13 U kazalištu	140
At the theatre	
14 Pakiranje	150
Packing	
15 Polazak	161
Departure	
16 U kvaru	170
Breakdown	
17 U kupovini	178
Shopping	
18 Prometna nesreća	191
Road accident	
19 Razgovor o svakodnevnom životu	203
Conversation about everyday life	
20 Kraj	217
The end	
Grammar summary	234
Key to main exercises	256
Translations of main texts	267
Croatian and Serbian–English glossary	282
English–Croatian and Serbian glossary	300
Subject index	308

Map of the linguistic area



■ Denotes Croatian, Serbian and Bosnian linguistic area

About this book

It is not possible here even to attempt to give an account of the history of the former Yugoslav lands where the Croatian and Serbian or Serbian and Croatian language is spoken. There are plenty of books which do so (with varying degrees of objectivity). Here we can only point out the major division of the territories into two parts: eastern – Serbia and Montenegro, in the Byzantine, Orthodox sphere of influence until they fell under Ottoman rule at the end of the fourteenth century; and western – Croatia, which was Catholic, and variously governed since the twelfth century by Venice, Austria and Hungary. Bosnia and Hercegovina, also an independent state in the Middle Ages, was ruled by the Ottoman Turks until 1878, when it too became part of the Habsburg monarchy.

Despite several centuries of separation, the peoples of these lands (including the Muslim Slav population of the central regions of Bosnia and Hercegovina) speak the same language. This was one of the main stimuli for the formation of a united South Slav, or ‘Yugoslav’ state. There are regional variations of course, the most immediately obvious being the existence of two alphabets: the Cyrillic script is used in the traditionally Orthodox areas, and the Latin alphabet in the Catholic ones. Some items of vocabulary have evolved differently and there are some divergences in grammatical structure. The analogy with British and American English gives a rough idea of what the relationship was between the Serbian and Croatian variants of the language within Yugoslavia. With the establishment of Croatia and Bosnia-Hercegovina as independent states in 1992, however, there has been a conscious endeavour to maximise the differences, with new words being introduced and much debate as to how to ensure that Croatian, and now also Bosnian, become identifiably separate languages. Whatever the long-term outcome, it is clear that speakers of the language only ever refer to what they speak as ‘Croatian’, ‘Serbian’ or ‘Bosnian’

respectively. When they need an umbrella term, they tend to use **naš jezik** or, informally, **naški** ('our language'). This is obviously impractical for the outsider, who continues to need a term which is at least less unwieldy than the accurate description: Bosnian-and-Hercegovinian-or-Croatian-or-Serbian-and-Montenegrin. Even the officially accurate 'Croatian, Serbian and Bosnian' cannot readily be used as the name of the language in English. The compromise chosen for this text-book will not be acceptable to many people in the region. It endeavours to convey the fact that while the material is presented in the Croatian variant of the language, it will be understood wherever 'Serbo-Croat' used to be spoken.

Learners should certainly think of the language presented here as 'Croatian'. At the same time, they should not feel that mastering this language restricts them to Croatia. The vocabulary section indicates when lexical items are specific to the territory of Croatia and alternatives are given. Apart from vocabulary, and the preference for some grammatical structures over others, the core of the Croatian version of the language is the choice of dialect: what is known as the 'ijekavian' (milk: **mlijeko**) rather than the 'ekavian' (milk: **mleko**). But, as the 'ijekavian' dialect is used in most of Bosnia and Hercegovina and in Montenegro, this version of the Serbian and Croatian language will travel widely.

Learners who wish to learn the Serbian version of the language will need consistently to adjust their pronunciation from 'ijekavian' to 'ekavian' and ensure that they use appropriate lexical items. The vocabulary section makes this possible. Some more effort will be required by such learners, but wide reading of Serbian publications and listening to Serbian broadcasts should soon make the adjustment straightforward. For the time being at least, the basic lexicon and grammar are shared throughout the territory of the former 'Serbo-Croat' speaking areas.

Alphabets

The historical division of the South Slav lands between the Orthodox and Catholic spheres of influence has meant that the Serbian and Croatian language may be written in either the Cyrillic or the Latin script. Both have been modified for the language's phonetic system, and transliteration letter for letter is possible from one to the other. The Cyrillic alphabet is given here and in addition the Serbian versions of the texts in Appendix, section 10, have been written in Cyrillic, so that anyone wishing to learn the Cyrillic script may do so.

Pronunciation

Of all the Slavonic languages, Serbian and Croatian is the easiest for English-speakers to master, and it is considered one of the easiest of all the European languages for English-speakers to pronounce. There is just one small hazard for those who have difficulty in producing a rolled 'r'. In some words 'r' has the value of a vowel and carries the stress. Innocent students should be prepared to be exposed to a series of tongue-twisters, such as **Navrh brda vrba mrda** (On top of the hill a willow sways), or words such as **Grk** (the name of a wine grown on the island of Korčula). or the onomatopoeic **cvrčci** (cicadas). The alphabet consists of thirty phonemes: one letter for each sound, and the pronunciation of these letters is constant, not varying with its position in a word. Each letter is pronounced, e.g. **pauk** (spider) consists of two separate syllables. Notice the spelling of **Srbija**: without the **j** there would have to be a break between the two final vowels **i-a**. The spelling is phonetic. That is to say, words are written just as they are spoken. In other words, the learner may gain full marks in a dictation from the very beginning.

Stress and tone

Stress

There is no absolute rule for the position of the stressed syllable in a word, except that it is never the final syllable. In a polysyllabic word it is generally the prepenultimate syllable – which in practice generally means the first syllable. In certain words, the stress may shift from singular to plural or from one case to another, e.g. **vrijeme** (time, weather) has genitive singular **vremena** and nominative plural **vremena**. This is something to listen for in the more advanced stages of learning the language. In this book the stress is marked by underlining in the new vocabulary as it is introduced. In a word of two syllables the stress is not marked, as it will always fall on the first.

Tone

The Serbian and Croatian language has a system of tonal stress which is on the one hand quite complex and on the other more marked among the speakers of some areas than others. This question may be largely ignored in the early stages except for one or two

situations indicated below. Nevertheless, the student should be encouraged from the outset to listen carefully to examples of the spoken language and observe the variations in tone. Traditional text-books identify four tones to indicate the rising or falling of the voice on (a) short and (b) long stressed syllables:

1 short rising	`	gospòdin (Mr)
2 short falling	``	gòspođa (Mrs)
3 long rising	˘	víno (wine)
4 long falling	ˆ	dân (day)

Naturally, these variations are more noticeable on long syllables. Occasionally they indicate a difference in meaning:

grád	town	gràd	hail
pàs	belt	pàs	dog
lùk	arch	lùk	onion

One instance is particularly obvious: when unstressed verbal **sam** (am) is used in conjunction with the adjective **sâm** (alone). The statement—**sâm sam** (I am alone) consists of two quite distinct sounds.

The cassettes which accompany this book enable the learner to hear the language spoken by native Croatian speakers. Dialogues and other sections of text which are on cassette are marked with the cassette icon in the margin.

NB When writing Croatian or Serbian, pay particular attention to the diacritic marks: **c**, **č** and **ć** are all different letters and to omit the diacritic will result in misunderstanding (as in English, if **t** is not crossed and is read as **l**). Also, when using dictionaries, be aware that **d**, **đ**, **l**, **lj** and **n**, **nj** are all *separate* letters: i.e. **ljiljan** (lily) will not be found under **l** but under **lj**.

Using the book

The grammar presented here may appear complicated at first as it contains so much that is new to the English-speaker. The student is advised to learn to observe the language in practice by close analysis of the reading passages which have been designed to illustrate each point as it arises. Tackle only one topic at a time and refer frequently to the main text of each lesson to observe each point 'in action'. Make sure that you have fully understood and absorbed

each point before going on to the next. Use the exercises to test your understanding and return to the relevant section if you make a mistake or are at all uncertain. There are two stories running through the book which may be used to monitor your progress: translate each instalment into English, checking your version with the translation at the back of the book, and, at a later date, translate it back into Croatian or Serbian. If you make a mistake be sure that you understand how you went wrong.

Every effort that you put into learning the language will be richly rewarded as you find yourself able to communicate increasingly freely.

Good luck!

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank the friends and colleagues who have helped with the various stages in the evolution of this book: Nada Šoljan and Damir Kalogjera, for their advice on the original version; Ljiljana Gjurgjan and Višnja Josipović, for their suggestions for the second edition; and Vesna Domany-Hardy, for her comments on the present work. I am well aware that my attitude to their language is unacceptable to some of my friends in Croatia and Bosnia at this time, but I hope at least that those who use this book will learn to understand more than just the language.

Table of pronunciation and the alphabets

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Approximate pronunciation</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Printed</i>	<i>Cyrillic</i>	<i>Cyrillic cursive</i>	<i>Cyrillic order</i>
A a	<u>a</u> in <u>fa</u> ther	mama (mum)	A a	А а		A
B b	as English <u>b</u>	brat (brother)	Б б	Б б		Б
C c	<u>ts</u> in <u>ca</u> ts	otac (father)	Ц ц	Ц ц		В
Č č	ch in <u>ch</u> urch	čaj (tea)	Ч ч	Ч ч		Г
Ć ć	roughly <u>tj</u>	kuća (house)	Ћ ћ	Ћ ћ		Д
D d	as English <u>d</u>	da (yes)	Д д	Д д		Ђ

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Approximate pronunciation</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Printed</i>	<i>Cyrillic cursive</i>	<i>Cyrillic order</i>
Dž dž	<u>J</u> in <u>J</u> ohn	dž emper (jumper)	Ц ц	Ї ѥ	Е
Đ đ	roughly <u>dj</u>	đ ak (pupil)	ћ ћ	ѣ ѣ	Ж
E e	<u>e</u> in <u>b</u> ed	k re <u>v</u> et (bed)	Е е	Е е	З
F f	as English <u>f</u>	f otograf <u>f</u> ija	Ф ф	Ф ф	И
G g	as English <u>g</u>	g ov <u>o</u> riti (to speak)	Г г	Г г	Ј
H h	<u>ch</u> in <u>l</u> och	h va <u>l</u> a (thank you)	Х х	Х х	К
I i	<u>e</u> in <u>h</u> e	i li (or)	И и	И и	Л
J j	<u>y</u> in <u>y</u> es	j aje (egg)	Ј ј	Ј ј	Љ
K k	as English <u>k</u>	k ino (cinema)	К к	К к	М
L l	as English <u>l</u>	l ijep (beautiful)	Л л	Л л	Н
Lj lj	<u>ll</u> in <u>m</u> illion	l ju <u>b</u> av (love)	Љ љ	Љ љ	НБ
M m	as English <u>m</u>	m o <u>l</u> im (please)	М м	М м	О
N n	as English <u>n</u>	n e (no)	Н н	Н н	П
Nj nj	<u>n</u> in <u>n</u> ews	k o <u>n</u> j (horse)	Њ њ	Њ њ	Р
O o	<u>o</u> in <u>no</u> t	o vd <u>je</u> (here)	О о	О о	О
P p	as English <u>p</u>	p je <u>s</u> ma (song)	П п	П п	Т
R r	rolled	r o <u>d</u> itel <u>j</u> i (parents)	Р р	Р р	Ѡ
S s	<u>ss</u> in <u>bl</u> ess	s est <u>r</u> a (sister)	С с	С с	У
Š š	<u>sh</u> in <u>sh</u> y	š lj <u>i</u> va (plum)	Ш ш	Ш ш	Ф
T t	as English <u>t</u>	t rg (square)	Т т	Т т	Х
U u	<u>oo</u> in <u>fo</u> od	u č <u>i</u> ti (to learn)	У у	У у	Ц
V v	as English <u>v</u>	v ino (wine)	В в	В в	Ч
Z z	as English <u>z</u>	z a <u>š</u> to (why)	З з	З з	Ц
Ž ž	<u>s</u> in <u>ple</u> asure	ž ivot (life)	Ж ж	Ж ж	Ш

1 Na putu

On the way

In this lesson we will look at:

- the verb **biti** (to be)
- personal pronouns. I, you, etc.
- basic word order
- formation of questions
- introducing yourself
- nationalities

Dialogue 1

Putnici se upoznaju

The travellers meet

Alan and Nora Cameron are travelling to Croatia for the first time. In the plane from London, they start talking to the man sitting next to Alan

- GOSPODIN CAMERON: Dobar dan.
GOSPODIN ANTIĆ: Dobar dan.
G. CAMERON: Oprostite, govorite li engleski?
G. ANTIĆ: Ne, na žalost. Razumijete li vi hrvatski?
G. CAMERON: Samo malo. Učim. Vi ste Hrvat, zar ne?
G. ANTIĆ: Jesam. A jeste li vi Englezi?
G. CAMERON: Nismo. Ja sam Škot, zovem se Alan Cameron. A moja žena je Irkinja. Ona se zove Nora.
G. ANTIĆ: Ja sam Marko Antić. Drago mi je.
G. CAMERON: I meni, također.

The main dialogues of Lessons 1–5 are translated on pp. 267–9.

Vocabulary

dobar (m.)	good	ona	she
dan	day	oprostite	excuse (me)
drago mi je	pleased to meet you (lit. 'it is dear to me')	putnik	traveller, passenger (pl. putnici)
gospodin	Mr	razumjeti	to understand (1st pers. sg. razumijem ; 2nd pers. pl. razumijete)
(abbrev. g.)			
gospođa (gđa.)	Mrs	samo	only
govoriti	to speak (2nd pers. pl. govorite)	ste	are (2nd pers. pl. of biti 'to be')
hrvatski	Croatian	takoder	likewise
i	and, also	učiti	to learn (1st pers. sg. učim)
i meni	and I (lit. 'and to me')	upoznavati	to meet, to get to know
ja	I	se	(1st pers. sg. upoznajem ; 3rd pers. pl. upoznaju)
je	is		you (plural and formal)
Je li	(introduces a question)	vi	
jesam	I am	zar ne?	isn't that so?
jeste	you are	zovem se	I am called (3rd pers. sg. zove se)
li	(interrog. particle)	žena	wife
malo	a little		
moja	my (f.; m. moj)		
na žalost	unfortunately		

Language points

Greetings

Dobar dan (good day) is used as the basic greeting for most of the day. The phrase for 'good morning' is used only up to about 10 a.m., 'good evening' after about 6 p.m. The previously common informal greeting **Zdravo** for either 'Hello' or 'Goodbye' is becoming less used in Croatia because of its associations with Communism and because it may be felt to be more Serbian. It is informal, the equivalent of

Italian ‘Ciao’ or ‘Hi’, which is itself now used increasingly in Croatia. In Zagreb in particular you will mainly hear ‘**Bog**’ (a contraction of **Zbogom** ‘(Go) with God’), or its more colloquial version ‘**Bok**’.

Absence of the article

There is no article in Croatian and Serbian. **Putnik** may mean ‘a traveller’ or ‘the traveller’, according to the context.

Word families

Many words are related to one another. Try to collect new words in groups as you come across them. For example:

put ‘path, road, way’; **autoput** ‘motorway’; **putnik** ‘traveller, passenger, tourist’; **putovati** ‘to travel’; **putna torba** ‘travel bag’; **preko puta** ‘across the way, opposite’
govor ‘speech’; **govoriti** ‘to speak’; **razgovor** ‘conversation’; **dogovor** ‘agreement’; **dogovoriti se** ‘to come to an agreement’; **ugovor** ‘contract’

Personal pronouns

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
1st	ja I	mi	we
2nd	ti you (familiar)	vi	you (formal, polite)
3rd	on he	oni	They (m. or mixed gender)
	ona she	one	they (f.)
	ono it	ona	they (n.)

Notice the two different words for ‘you’. **Ti** is the familiar singular form, used for family, contemporaries, close friends, colleagues, children and animals. **Vi** is used for more than one person and also as a more formal way of addressing one person to show distance and respect for age or social status. Like nouns and adjectives, the pronouns have different forms depending on their function in a sentence. You will learn these later.

Because the verb endings in Croatian and Serbian clearly denote the person of the subject, personal pronouns are not used when they are the subject (i.e. in the nominative case) except for emphasis. Compare:

Kako se zovete? (no personal pronoun)

What are you called?

Zovem se Slavko. Kako se vi zovete?

I am called Slavko. What are *you* called?

Ne razumiju engleski. Govori li on hrvatski?

They don't understand English. Does *he* speak Croatian?

The verb biti (to be)

This is the first verb you must learn. The verb **biti** has two forms: a long, stressed form and a short, unstressed (*enclitic*) form. The short form is the more common, while the stressed form is used in certain specific situations.

There are several short forms of this kind in Croatian and Serbian, known as 'enclitics'. These are words which carry no stress and are pronounced as though they were part of the preceding word. Consequently, they cannot be placed first in a sentence or clause.

(a) The short form

(I)	(ja)	sam	(we)	(mi)	smo
(you)	(ti)	si	(you)	(vi)	ste
(he/she/it)	(on/ona/ono)	je	(they)	(oni/one/ona)	su

Ja sam Englez Ona je Irkinja Vi ste Hrvat Mi smo putnici
 I am English She is Irish You are Croatian We are passengers

Exercise 1

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of **biti**:

- 1 Ja . . . Englez. 2 Mi . . . Hrvati. 3 On . . . Škot.
 4 Vi . . . Englezi. 5 Ona . . . Irkinja. 6 Ti . . . Hrvat.
 7 Oni . . . Škoti.

(b) The long form

Once you have learned the short forms, you can move on to the long forms. You will see that the endings are the same but they have an additional initial syllable. They are generally used *without the personal pronoun*.

(I)	jesam	(we)	jesmo
(you)	jesi	(you)	jeste
(he/she/it)	je	(they)	jesu

Remember: the short forms are the norm, the long forms are used only in certain specific situations:

1 in questions which follow this model:

stressed verb + *interrog. part.* **li** + *subject*

jeste	li	Englez?
jesu	li	Škoti?
jesi	li	Amerikanac?

2 in single-word answers to such questions as:

Jeste li Englez? Jesam. Are you English? Yes, I am.

3 for special emphasis:

Jeste li umorni? Ja jesam, ali Alan nije.
Are you tired? Yes *I* am, but Alan is not.

Exercise 2

Answer the following questions, using the long forms:

- 1 Jeste li Englez/Engleskinja?
- 2 Jesu li Alan i Nora putnici?
- 3 Jesmo li studenti?
- 4 Jesam li profesor?
- 5 Je¹ li Marko Antić Hrvat?

¹In Croatian, the short form of the third person singular **je** is generally used instead of the long form **jest**. But this does not apply to any other person. If you are using the language in countries other than Croatia, the long form should be used.

(c) The negative form of biti

(ja)	nisam	(mi)	nismo
(ti)	nisi	(vi)	niste
(on/ona/ono)	nije	(oni/one/ona)	nisu

Ja nisam umoran **On nije Hrvat** **Mi nismo studenti**
I am not tired He is not Croatian We are not students

Exercise 3

Complete the sentences in exercise 1 and answer the questions in exercise 2, this time with the *negative* forms.

Dialogue 2 

Ante and Branko meet in a Zagreb street

ANTE: Zdravo, Branko!

BRANKO: Bog, Ante!

ANTE: Kako si?

BRANKO: Dobro, hvala. Kako si ti?

ANTE: *Hi, Branko!*

BRANKO: *Hi, Ante!*

ANTE: *How are you?*

BRANKO: *Well, thanks. How are you?*

Exercise 4

Introduce yourself, using all the vocabulary you have learned so far.

Word order

There are several little unstressed words which the foreign learner can find tiresome to start with. They include the short forms of **biti**, which we have learned, the short forms of the personal pronouns, the interrogative particle **li** and the reflexive particle **se**. They are all enclitics (see p. 10) and must be placed immediately after the *first* stressed word, or phrase, in a sentence or clause. Examples:

Ja sam umoran

I am tired

Mislím da ste umorni

I think you're tired

Nisam, gladan sam

No, I'm hungry

It follows that, where unstressed forms are concerned, word order is quite strict, and that it is affected by the presence or absence of the personal pronoun. Compare:

Mi smo gladni

We are hungry

Gladni smo

The meaning here is identical, except that the use of the personal pronoun tends to make the sentence emphatic.

Zovem se Marija (neutral)
Ja se zovem Marija (emphatic)

Exercise 5*

(Answers to all exercises marked * are given in the key at the end of the book.)

Complete the following passage, filling in the gaps:

Alan Cameron _____ Škot. _____ li on putnik? _____ li gladan, Alan? _____, a vi, jeste li _____ gladni? Ne, _____ gladan, hvala. Je _____ Nora Irkinja? Je, ona _____ Irkinja. Možda _____ ona gladna!

Formation of questions

As in English, questions may be expressed through intonation alone:

Vi ste Englez?
 You're English?

In the written language, however, one of the other forms should be used.

(a) Questions may be introduced by an interrogative:

<i>interrog.</i>	<i>verb</i>	
Zašto	učite hrvatski?	<i>Why are you learning Croatian?</i>
Tko	ste vi?	<i>Who are you?</i>
Što	radiš ovdje?	<i>What are you doing here?</i>

(b) When a sentence does not contain an interrogative word, the particle **li** is used (A particle is a short, indeclinable part of speech.). This is placed immediately after the main verb, which must then be the first word in the sentence:

<i>verb</i>	<i>interrog. part.</i>	
Dolazite	li	često ovamo? <i>Do you come here often?</i>
Puši	li	vaša žena? <i>Does your wife smoke?</i>

(c) Another way of using the particle **li** is to combine it with the conjunction **da**. In this case the main verb may be placed anywhere in the sentence:

question marker

Da li često putujete? Do you travel often?
Da li studenti mnogo piju? Do the students drink a lot?

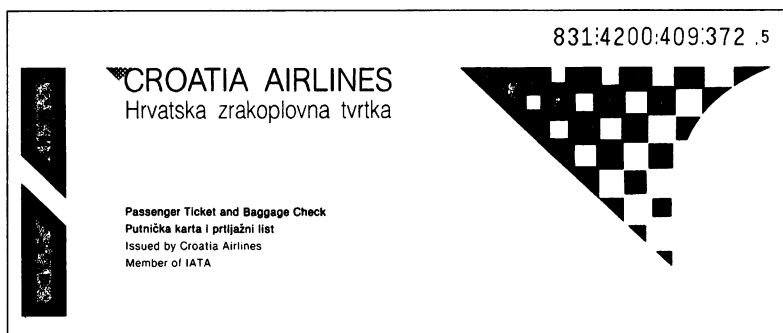
NB This structure is not favoured in Croatian. Use (b): verb + **li**.

(d) Negative questions are introduced by **zar**:

particle negative verb

Zar nisi Englez? Aren't you English?
Zar studenti ne piju? Don't the students drink?

See Appendix for three other patterns.



Reading passage 1

Priča našeg vremena

A story of our time

This story, of an English businessman's adventures in Croatia, runs through the whole of this book. It is intended to illustrate the language in action and some useful vocabulary, using mainly narrative. There is another story 'Love story', also in instalments, illustrating the use of colloquial dialogue. New words will be listed underneath each instalment, but do not feel you should attempt to learn them all at this stage. There are translations of the complete stories at the end of the book. These can be used later on as translation exercises: you should try to translate them back into Croatian or Serbian.

Mark Dunlop is travelling to Croatia on business. He is on the plane to Zagreb

Mark Dunlop je Englez. Putuje u Zagreb. On uči hrvatski. Dosta razumije jezik, ali kaže da još ne govori dobro. Sada je umoran. Neka spava!

jezik 'language'; **kaže** 'he says'; **još ne** not yet'; **sada** 'now'; **umoran** 'tired'; **neka spava!** 'let him sleep!'

Exercise 6

Answer the following questions:

- 1 Je li Mark Dunlop Hrvat?
- 2 Putuje li u London?
- 3 Uči li kineski?¹
- 4 Razumije li hrvatski?
- 5 Da li dobro govori?
- 6 Je li sada gladan?²

¹ Chinese; ² hungry

Language points

Nationalities

For the time being you will need to learn each of these individually: there are set patterns and with time you will recognise them. In many cases the name of the country is the feminine form of the adjective which also gives the name of the language: **Engleska** (England), **engleski** (English); **Hrvatska** (Croatia), **hrvatski** (Croatian); but the nationalities: **Englez**, **Engleskinja**, **Hrvat**, **Hrvatica**, have to be learned.

Other countries, languages and nationalities in the region are: **Slovenija**, **slovenski**, **Slovenac**, **Slovenka**; **Bosna**, **bosanski**, **Bosanac**, **Bosanka**; **Hercegovina**, (**bosanski**), **Hercegovac**, **Hercegovka**; **Srbija**, **srpski**, **Srbin**, **Srpkinja**; **Crna Gora**, (**srpski**), **Crnogorac**, **Crnogorka**; **Makedonija**, **makedonski**, **Makedonac**, **Makedonka**.

Other nationalities etc. in the British Isles: **Škotska**, (**Škotlandija**), **Škot** (**Škotlandanin**), **Škotlandanka**; **Irska** (**Irlandija**), **Irac** (**Irlandanin**), **Irkinja** (**Irlandanka**); **Vels** (**Wales**), **velski**, **Velšanin**, **Velšanka**.

Language in action

Questions and answers

Damir is showing John round his home town

JOHN:	Što je ovo?	What is this?
DAMIR:	Ovo je pošta.	This is a post office.
JOHN:	Što je to?	What is that?
DAMIR:	To je kazalište.	That is a theatre.
JOHN:	Je li to trafikar?	Is that a tobacconist's?
DAMIR:	Ne, to je knjižara.	No, that's a bookshop.
JOHN:	Gdje je apoteka?	Where is the chemist's?
DAMIR:	Tamo, preko puta.	There, across the road.

Culture point

Drago mi je and **milo mi je** mean 'I am glad' or 'delighted'. These expressions are used frequently when people are introduced to one another. A third person is not needed to make the introduction: strangers will introduce themselves, telling you their name, or just their surname, as they shake your hand.

Exercise 7*

(a) Answer the following questions on the dialogue at the beginning of this lesson. Do this only when you feel you have really got to grips with the lesson.

- 1 Govori li g. Antić engleski?
- 2 Razumije li g. Cameron hrvatski?
- 3 Je li g. Antić Englez?
- 4 A g. Cameron, je li on Englez?
- 5 Kako se zove gđa. Cameron?
- 6 Je li Nora Engleskinja?

(a somewhere between 'and' and 'but': here it conveys something like 'And what about . . . ?'; **kako** 'how', **kako se zovete** 'What is your name?', lit. 'How are you called?')

(b) Translate the following passage into Croatian or Serbian:

I am Mr Smith. Who¹ are you? My name is Marko. Are you English? No, I'm a Croat. Do you speak English? No, unfortunately. But you understand Croatian! Only a bit.

¹Who' **tko**

(c) Supply the missing half of the following dialogue:

ANTIĆ: Dobar dan.

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Razumijete li hrvatski?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Kako se zove vaša žena?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Drago mi je. Ja sam Miroslav Antić.

CAMERON: _____

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (1)

Love story

Ivan and Mira are in love

Ivan i Mira se vole. Sjede u kavani i gledaju se u oči.

– Tako si lijepa! Jako te volim! – kaže Ivan.

– I ti si lijep. Što sam sretna! – kaže Mira.

– Dođi ovamo da te poljubim!

– Ali ne ovdje, Ivane! Svi nas gledaju!

kavana 'cafe'; **tako** 'so'; **lijep** (m.), **lijepa** (f.) 'beautiful, handsome'; **što sam sretna!** 'how happy I am!' (m. **sretan**); **dodi** 'come'; **ovamo** 'over here'; **poljubiti** 'to kiss'; **svi** 'everyone (all)'; **nas** 'us' (object case).

2 Razgovor o putovanju

Conversation about travelling

In this lesson we will look at:

- main conjugations of verbs
- verbal aspect
- reflexive verbs
- adverbs

Dialogue 1

Razgovor u zrakoplovu

Conversation in the plane

Alan and Mr Antić discuss travelling and different forms of travel

G. ANTIĆ: Volite li putovati?

G. CAMERON: Da, jako volim. Često putujem. A vi? Volite li putovati?

G. ANTIĆ: Volim, naročito vlakom kad imam vremena. Na žalost moram često poslovno putovati zrakoplovom.¹

G. CAMERON: Rado se vozim autom, ali Zagreb je predaleko. Volim i ja putovati vlakom.

G. ANTIĆ: Da, volim gledati kroz prozor dok putujem, pomalo i spavati, a ponekad izlazim u hodnik da popušim cigaretu. Ugodno je.

G. CAMERON: Slažem se! Ali čovjek rijetko ima vremena za to . . .

¹ **zrakoplov** is an old Croatian word, now brought back into use; in other Serbian- and Croatian-speaking areas the word for plane is **avion**. 'By air, by plane' **avionom**.

Vocabulary

ali	but	naročito	particularly
autom	by car (auto , automobil)	ponmalo	a little
cigaretu	cigarette (object case)	ponekad	sometimes
često	often	popušiti (popušim)	to have a smoke
čovjek	a man, one	poslovno	on business
da	(here) in order to	predaleko	too far
dok	while	prozor	window
gledati (gledam)	to look	putovati (putujem)	to travel
hodnik	corridor	rijetko	rarely
imati	to have	spavati (spavam)	to sleep
imati vremena	to have time	također	also; likewise
izlaziti (izlazim)	to go out	u	in, into
jako	very; very much	vlakom	by train (vlak)
kad	when	voljeti (volim)	to like, to love
kroz	through	voziti se	to drive, or travel by any
morati (moram)	to have to	(vozim se)	means of transport
		zrakoplovom	by plane

Language points

Verbs 1: Main conjugations

There are several classes of regular verbs. See Appendix 4 for a complete list of these. For the time being it will be enough to learn the three main sets of endings, which are classified according to the first person singular ending in the present tense. These endings are: **-am**; **-im**; **-em**. Once you know the first person singular of any regular verb, the other persons of the present tense can be deduced.

- am:** This is the most straightforward set of endings. The infinitive of these verbs ends in **-ati**: **imati**, **imam** (to have); **morati**, **moram** (to have to, 'must').
- im:** This set of endings is usually derived from an infinitive ending in **-iti**: **Govoriti**, **govorim** (to speak); but they may also be derived from **-ati**: **držati**, **držim** (to hold); or **-eti**: **voljeti**, **volim** (to like, love), **željeti**, **želim** (to want).

-em This is the most frequent set of endings and is derived from many different infinitives. The first person present should always be learned.

	<i>morati</i>	<i>govoriti</i>	<i>razumjeti</i>	<i>zvati (se)</i>
(ja)	moram	govorim	razumijem	zovem (se)
(ti)	moraš	govoriš	razumiješ	zoveš (se)
(on/ona/ono)	mora	govori	razumije	zove (se)
(mi)	moramo	govorimo	razumijemo	zovemo (se)
(vi)	morate	govorite	razumijete	zovete (se)
(oni/one/ona)	moraju	govore	razumiju	zovu (se)

CROATIA AIRLINES



CLUB
FREQUENT FLYER

FF Club svojim je članovima pripremio ugodno iznenađenje:

Kupovina u Duty free shopu bit će za vas dvostruko zadovoljstvo - uživat ćete u proizvodima vrhunskih svjetskih tvrtki a mi ćemo zabilježiti dodatne milje u vašoj evidenciji.

Prelazi li vrijednost kupljene robe iznos od 100 DEM obavezno zatražite račun od kabinskog osoblja. Originalni račun s vašim imenom i prezimenom, upisanim datumom, i brojem leta te brojem vaše članske kartice potvrda je da ste vi osobno kupili robu.

Milje se zbrajaju na slijedeći način:

DEM	MILJE
100-159	150
160-200	200
201 i više	250

Donesite račun osobno ili ga pošaljite na adresu:
FF Club, Savska 41, 10000 Zagreb

Dialogue 2

Two passengers are talking at the airport as they wait for their plane to depart

ANTE: Idem na kavu, a vi?

BRANKO: Idem najprije kupiti novine.

ANTE: A ja moram naći duty-free: želim kupiti cigarete.

BRANKO: Ja želim kupiti viski i konjak.

ANTE: *I'm going for a coffee, how about you?*

BRANKO: *I'm going to buy a newspaper first.*

ANTE: *And I have to find the duty-free: I want to buy cigarettes.*

BRANKO: *I want to buy whisky and cognac.*

Exercise 1

(a) Give the appropriate ending of the following verbs:

Model: Ti pušiti (pušim) = pušiš

mi voziti se (vozim se); čitati (čitam); putovati (putujem)

on spavati (spavam); voljeti (volim); izlaziti (izlazim)

oni imati (imam); popiti (popijem); željeti (želim)

ti govoriti (govorim); razumjeti (razumijem); gledati (gledam)

vi morati (moram); piti (pijem); sjediti (sjedim)

čitati (čitam) 'to read'; piti (pijem), popiti (popijem) 'to drink (have a drink)'

(b) Complete the following sentences:

Da li vi _____ putovati? Da, jako _____. Često _____. Volite li _____ zrakoplovom? Ne, više _____ putovati autom. I ja rado _____ vlakom. Volim _____ kroz prozor. Spavate li dok _____ vlakom? Da, spavam pomalo i _____

Verbs 2: aspect

This is a new idea to English language speakers, so it is as well to introduce it as early as possible. We shall return to it in greater detail later. For the time being, you should know that most Croatian and Serbian verbs have two forms, known as the **imperfective** and the **perfective** aspects.

It is possible to express a great range of different meanings by modifying the form of the verb, introducing ideas of repetition, partial action, etc. The basic division is into:

- 1 action which is thought of as continuing, incomplete, 'ongoing': *imperfective*;
- 2 action which is thought of as complete or limited: *perfective*.

For example:

stvarati (*imperfective*) to be creating

the noun derived from this verb, **stvaranje**, means the *process* of creating, e.g. **stvaranje svijeta** 'the creation of the world' (the act of creating);

stvoriti (*perfective*) to create and complete the action

the noun derived from this verb, **stvorenje**, means 'a creature' (the thing created), e.g. **ijudsko stvorenje** 'a human being'.

In Dialogue 1 there is an example of the use of the perfective aspect: **da popušim cigaretu** (or **popušiti cigaretu**) (in order to smoke a cigarette). The speaker is thinking of completing the act of smoking before returning to the compartment. The imperfective **pušiti** means more or less 'to be smoking'. Another example would be **Idem popiti kavu** (I'm going to have a coffee). The speaker is thinking of drinking the whole cup. The imperfective is **piti**, meaning 'to drink' in a general way, e.g. **Piješ li pivo?** ('Do you drink beer?') or ('Are you (at the moment) drinking beer?').

Reading passage 1

Priča našeg vremena (2)

Mark is trying to read his Croatian text book in the plane, but he is tired and once he has had a whisky, he can't keep awake

Mark Dunlop putuje zrakoplovom u Zagreb. Obično voli putovati, ali danas je umoran. Pokušava čitati priručnik: on mora učiti hrvatski! Stjuardesa prolazi s pićem. Mark popije jedan viski. Njegove oči se zatvaraju. Priručnik se zatvara.

obično 'usually'; **danas** 'today'; **pokušavati** 'to try'; **priručnik** 'text-book'; **stjuardesa** 'stewardess'; **prolazi** 'passes'; **s** 'with'; **piće** 'drink' (**s pićem**: do not be surprised if you encounter different endings; they will be explained; get used to recognising the root word); **jedan** 'one, a' (indefinite article); **viski** 'whisky'; **njegove** 'his' (with f. pl. noun); **oči** 'eyes' (the plural is f. pl. in form, but sg. **oko** is neuter); **zatvarati se** 'to close'

Exercise 2

Answer the following questions on the dialogue at the beginning of this lesson:

- 1 Voli li g. Cameron putovati?
- 2 Da li često putuje?

- 3 Voli li g. Antić putovati vlakom?
 4 A zrakoplovom?
 5 Zašto se g. Cameron ne vozi autom u Zagreb?
 6 Što radi g. Antić u vlaku?

Word formation

The verb ići (to go)

You will have noticed from the examples in the Verbs 2 section that one means of making a perfective is by the addition of a prefix. The verb **ići** and its derivatives offer a useful example of the way in which the addition of a prefix modifies the meaning of a verb. **Ići** itself is bi-aspectual and the only neutral verb of motion. All its derivatives convey some further information about the nature of the movement:

od (away from) + **ići** = **otići** to go away, leave
Moram sutra otići I must go away tomorrow

Once the new meaning has been established, a new imperfective must be made to express it as well:

otići (pf.) **odlaziti** (imp.)
Odlazim u podne I am leaving at noon

Verbal prefixes

Here are some prepositions which can be used as prefixes: **u** 'in, into'; **do** 'up to'; **na** 'on, on to'; **od** 'away from'; **s** 'down from'. Other common prefixes (which are not prepositions): **po**, **pre** (denotes 'over'), **pro** ('passing by'), **raz** ('dispersal').

Verbs of motion deriving from ići

do **Dolazite li često ovamo?** Do you come here often?
Moraš doći da vidiš auto! You must come to see the car!
u **Ulazi polako u vodu** He goes slowly into the water
Popravlja kravatu prije nego uđe u ured He straightens (his) tie before he goes into the office
iz **Izlazimo svaki dan u 8 sati** We go out every day at 8 o'clock
Izaći će kad završi zadaću He will go out when he finishes (his) homework

od	Gledaju kako brod odlazi	They watch the boat go away
	Zar moraš tako brzo otići?	Must you go away so soon?
s	Silazite li ovdje, gospodine?	Are you getting off here, sir?
	Sidi kod pošte	Get off by the post office
na	Ona uvijek nalazi dobre restorane	She always finds (comes on) good restaurants
	Ne mogu naći adresu	I can't find the address
po-	Vlak polazi u 10 sati	The train leaves (sets off) at 10 o'clock
	Moramo odmah poći!	We must leave at once!
pre-	Nikada ne prelaze sami ulicu	They never cross the road alone
	Pređite sada, svijetlo je zeleno!	Cross now, the light is green!
pro-	Prolazi često pokraj njenog prozora	He often passes by her window
	Ovaj dan će brzo proći	This day will pass quickly

Do not attempt to learn all of this straight away. Remember the effect of the addition of prefixes to form perfectives, and use these sentences for later reference.

Exercise 3*

Fill in the missing words. Try to do it without looking at the original passage.

Mark Dunlop putuje ____ Zagreb. Obično voli ____, ali danas ____ umoran. On ____ učiti hrvatski! Njegove oči ____ zatvaraju. Priručnik se ____ .

Sentence building

Dependence of one verb on another

One verb can depend on another in two basic ways:

(a) *Main verb + infinitive*

Moram	izići	I must go out
Žele	popušiti cigaretu	They want to smoke a cigarette
Volite li	putovati?	Do you like to travel?

NB This is the construction favoured in Croatian.

(b) <i>Main verb</i> +	da (<i>conjunction</i>) +	<i>present</i>
Moram	da	iziđem
Žele	da	popuše cigaretu
Volite li	da	putujete?

Serbian favours model (b).

Exercise 4*

Make sentences from the words given below

Example: Voljeti, putovati, ja. Volim putovati.

- 1 učiti hrvatski, morati, Mark.
- 2 željeti, govoriti jezik, ti.
- 3 voljeti, spavati, mi.
- 4 morati, pušiti, oni.
- 5 voljeti, voziti se autom, ona.

Reflexive verbs

There are many reflexive verbs in Croatian and Serbian. They consist of a verb, which is conjugated in the normal way, and the indeclinable reflexive particle **se**. **Se** is an enclitic and therefore subject to the same rules of word order as the short forms of **biti**. Where it occurs with other enclitics, it comes after all the others except **je** (3rd pers. sg. of **biti**).

sjećati se (imperfective), **sjetiti se** (perfective) to remember
rado se sjećam (literally) I gladly remember, I like to remember

Želi se sjetiti He/she wants to remember

Some verbs are always reflexive, while others may be used either reflexively or as ordinary transitive verbs with a direct object:

Zovem sina svaki dan I call (my) son every day

Zovem se Crvenkapica I am called Little Red Riding Hood

Zatvaram priručnik i gledam kroz prozor

I close the text-book and look out of the window

Priručnik se zatvara i pada na pod

The text-book closes and falls on the floor

Volim te

I love you

Mi se volimo

We love each other

Gleda more

He is looking at the sea

Oni se gledaju

They are looking at each other

Exercise 5*

Complete these pairs of sentences by putting the reflexive particle in the appropriate place:

- 1 Vozim, autom. Oni, voze autom.
- 2 Zove, Alan. Putnik, zove Alan.
- 3 Žele, sjećati. Ona, želi, sjećati.
- 4 Dućan, zatvarati. Zatvara, u 8 sati.

dućan 'shop'; **u 8 sati** 'at 8 o'clock'

Adverbs

These are indeclinable, i.e. they have one form only. Some must be individually learned (**ponekad, pomalo**), others are the neuter nominative form of adjectives (**dobro, rado, poslovno**).

Exercise 6*

(a) Answer the following questions on the text at the beginning of this lesson:

- 1 Voli li g. Cameron putovati?
- 2 Da li često putuje?
- 3 Voli li g. Antić putovati vlakom?
- 4 A avionom?
- 5 Zašto se g. Cameron ne vozi autom?
- 6 Što radi g. Antić u vlaku?

zašto? 'why?'; **zato što** 'because', **raditi** 'to do'

(b) Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 Do you like to travel?
- 2 I don't like travelling by plane.
- 3 Are you looking out of the window?
- 4 They often sleep in the train.
- 5 He likes to travel by train when he has time.

(c) Complete the following dialogue:

ANTIĆ: Dobar dan, gospodine Cameron. Kako ste?

CAMERON: Dobro, hvala, a _____?

ANTIĆ: I ja sam dobro. Volim putovati. A vi?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Putujete li često?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Ja ne volim putovati avionom.

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Da, volim putovati vlakom.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (2)

Ivan i Mira šetaju gradom.

– Što želiš raditi? – pita Ivan.

– Ne znam – odgovara Mira. – Što predlažeš?

– Ne znam ni ja. Hoćeš li u kino?

– Možda. Što se daje?

– Daje se neki novi talijanski film. Kažu da je izvrstan.

– Važi. Baš mi se ide u kino!

šetati (se) 'to walk'; **grad** 'town', **gradom** 'through the town'; **pitati** 'to ask'; **znati** 'to know'; **odgovarati (odgovaram)** 'to reply'; **što** 'what'; **predlagati (predlažem)** 'to suggest'; **ni** 'neither'; **ja** 'I'; **hoćeš li** 'do you want?' (the verb 'to go' is understood); **kino** 'cinema'; **možda** 'perhaps'; **davati se (dajem)** 'to give', here: 'what's playing?'; **neki** 'some'; **novi** 'new'; **talijanski** 'Italian'; **kazati (kažem)** 'to say'; **da** 'that'; **izvrstan** 'excellent'; **važi** 'OK'; **baš** emphatic particle, conveys something like 'really'; **mi se ide** idiomatic: 'I feel like going' (**mi** is the indirect object case of **ja**)

3 Dolazak u Zagreb

Arrival in Zagreb

In this lesson we will look at:

- nouns
- the nominative case
- the vocative case
- simple letters
- adjectives from proper nouns
- double negatives

Dialogue 1

Dolazak na zračnu luku

Arrival at the airport

The Camerons arrive at Zagreb airport. They talk to Mr Antić as they enter the arrivals lounge

ALAN: Evo nas u Zagrebu!

ANTIĆ: Jeste li prvi put u Zagrebu?

NORA: Jesmo. Jako se veselimo.

ANTIĆ: Zračna luka je mala. Formalnosti se brzo završavaju. Morate pokazati putovнице. Imate li što prijaviti?

NORA: Nemamo. Prtljaga se uzima sa trake a onda se prelazi carinska kontrola, je li?

ANTIĆ: Tako je.

NORA: Čeka li vas netko ovdje?

ANTIĆ: Da. Moj sin. Upravo ga vidim tamo kod vrata!

NORA: Pazi, Alane, stižu naše stvari! Idem naći koljica.

Vocabulary

carinska kontrola	customs	prelaziti (imp.)	pass through
čekati (čekam)	to wait	prijaviti (pf.)	to declare
evo nas!	here we are!	prtljaga	luggage
ga	him (object case of on)	prvi put	first time
kolica (nt. pl.)	trolley	putovnica	passport
kod (+ G)	at, by, at the home of	sin	son
mala	small (mali m.)	stizati (imp. stižem)	to arrive
naći (nađem)	to find	stvar (f.)	thing
naše	our (f. pl.)	što	anything (nešto 'something')
neмати	not to have (negative form of imati)	tamo	there
onda	then	traka	conveyor belt
ovdje	here	u Zagrebu	in Zagreb
pazi!	watch out! take care!	uzimati (imp.)	to take
pokazati (imp. pokažem)	to show	veseliti se	to be pleased
		vidjeti (vidim)	to see
		vrata (nt. pl.)	door
		zračna luka ¹	airport (luka 'port, harbour')

¹**zračna luka** is used only in Croatia, the international **aerodrom** everywhere else.

Language points

Nouns

Every Croatian and Serbian noun has a gender – masculine, feminine or neuter – which determines its declension. In the great majority of cases, the gender is immediately obvious from the nominative ending of the noun (the form in which it appears in the dictionary).

Masculine nouns

Most masculine nouns end in a consonant. Consonants may be 'hard' or, less frequently, 'soft'. The 'soft' consonants are **ć, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š, ž**; all other consonants are hard.

čovjek	(hard)
vlak	(hard)
prijatelj	(soft) friend

Some masculine nouns end in **-o** (or **-e** after a 'soft' consonant). This is the case with a large number of proper names, e.g. **Marko**, **Ivo**, **Đorđe** and a number of nouns which used to end in **-l**. This **l** recurs in other cases.

ugao 'corner' – **u uglu** 'in the corner'

A clear example is the noun 'table':

stol in Croatian

but **sto** in Serbian – **na stolu** 'on the table'

Masculine nominative plural ending: -i. Most monosyllabic masculine nouns have an additional syllable in the plural:

stol	stolovi
vlak	vlakovi

If the final consonant is soft', then **-ovi** becomes **-evi**:

muž **muževi** (husband)

Certain combinations of consonants and vowels involve consonant changes, for example the combination **k + i** is replaced by **-ci**:

putnik **putnici**

Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns end in **-o** or **-e**:

selo	village
more	sea

Neuter nominative plural ending: **-a**: **sela**, **mora**

Feminine nouns

The great majority end in **-a**: **putovnica**, **luka**, **torba**.

A few feminine nouns end in a consonant. There are not many and they must be learned. They include a large number of abstract nouns; and all abstract nouns ending in **-ost**. Examples: **noć** 'night'; **stvar** 'thing'; **zvijer** 'wild animal'; **ljubaznost** 'kindness'.

Feminine plural:

For nouns whose singular ends in **-a** the nominative plural ending is **-e**: **gospođe, torbe**.

For nouns ending in a consonant the nominative plural ending is **-i**: **noći, stvari**.



AUTOBUSNA KARTA

Autobusni kolodvor - Zračna luka
Zračna luka - Autobusni kolodvor

BUS TICKET

Town Terminal - Airport
Airport - Town Terminal

CIJENA 15 kn

FARE 15 kn

Karta vrijedi samo za jedan pravac.
Kupljena karta ne može se vratiti.

Ticket is valid for one way only.
Ticket is not refundable.

Seriya: A

No 015165

Dialogue 2

Two travellers are discussing their luggage. There seems to have been a mix-up

ANTE: Oprostite, gospodine, je li to vaša torba?

BRANKO: Je. Zašto pitate?

ANTE: Mislim da je to moja torba.

BRANKO: Pogriješili ste.

ANTE: Ali pogledajte: ovdje je moje ime!

BRANKO: Oh, u pravu ste! Oprostite! Onda je ovo moja torba!

ANTE: Tako je! Hvala vam.

BRANKO: Hvala vama!

ANTE: *Excuse me, sir, is this your bag?*

BRANKO: *Yes. Why do you ask?*

ANTE: *I think it's my bag.*

BRANKO: *You're mistaken.*

ANTE: *But look: here is my name!*

BRANKO: *Oh, you're right! I'm sorry! Then this is my bag!*

ANTE: *That's right! Thank you.*

BRANKO: *Thank you!*

Exercise 1*

Give the plural of each of the following nouns:

gospoda	Hrvat	Englez	žena
mladić	djevojka	Irkinja	jezik
cigareta	hodnik	prozor	putovnica

Language points**The nominative case ('name'/subject case)**

The main uses of the nominative case are:

- 1 For the subject of a sentence or clause:

Alan Cameron gleda kroz prozor

Alan Cameron is looking through the window

Vi pijete šljivovicu, a on pije pivo

You are drinking plum brandy, he is drinking beer

Mislim da Nora dolazi sutra

I think that Nora is coming tomorrow

Na žalost, vlak kasni

Unfortunately, the train is late

- 2 For the complement after **biti**:

Alan je Škot

Alan is a Scot

Kažu da nisi Englez. Je li istina?

They say you are not English. Is it true?

Moj sin je dobar student

My son is a good student

Nada je jako lijepa žena

Nada is a very beautiful woman

Exercise 2

Fill in the gaps in the following sentences with one of these nouns:

putnik, Škot, kontrola, Hrvat, prtljaga, putovnica, torba, zrakoplov

- 1 Gdje je carinska ____?
- 2 Alan je ____.
- 3 Gdje je naša ____?

- 4 ____ stiže u Zagreb.
 5 Je li ovo vaša ____?
 6 Je li ____ kod tebe?
 7 Ivo je ____.
 8 ____ uzima prtljagu.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (3)

- Imaš li para? – pita Mira.
- Čekaj da vidim. Ali, gdje mi je novčanik? Nema ga, zamisli. Mora da je doma.
- Ivane – kaže Mira ozbiljno – što je ovo? Nikad nemaš para. Ja uvijek sve platim. Dosta mi je.
- Nemoj biti takva! Idem po novčanik. Možemo se naći kod kina.
- Neću više. Idem doma slušati glazbu. Možeš doći ako hoćeš.
- Hvala. Nije mi do glazbe. Idem u kino.
- Do viđenja, onda.
- Zbogom.

para 'money' (coll., G pl.); **pitati (pitam)** 'to ask'; **novčanik** 'wallet' (**novac** 'money'); **nema ga** 'it's not here'; **zamisliti (zamislim)** 'to imagine'; **mora** 'it must'; **doma** 'at home'; **ozbiljno** 'seriously'; **nikad** 'never' (notice the double negative); **uvijek** 'always'; **sve** 'everything, all'; **dosta mi je** 'I've had enough' (lit. 'it is enough to me'); **nemoj** 'don't'; **takva** 'like that' (m. **takav**); **po** 'for'; **moći (mogu, može, možemo)** 'to be able'; **neću više** 'I won't (take) any more'; **slušati** 'to listen'; **glazba** 'music'; **doći (dođem)** 'to come'; **ako** 'if'; **hoćeš** 'you want' (irreg. vb; **htjeti, hoću**); **nije mi do** 'I don't feel like'; **zbogom** 'goodbye' (conveys a certain finality!)

Exercise 3*

(a) Write a list of all the nouns which are used in the nominative case (singular and plural) in Dialogue 1 of this lesson.

(b) Give the plural of the following nouns:

cigareta, Englez, torba, hodnik, luka, sin (remember the additional syllable) **putovnica, vlak, Hrvat, automobil**

(c) Answer the following questions on 'Ljubavna priča (3)'

- 1 Ima li Ivan para?
- 2 Gdje je njegov novčanik?
- 3 Gdje Ivan kaže da se mogu naći?

- 4 Što Mira želi raditi?
5 Želi li Ivan slušati glazbu?

njegov: 'his'

Language points

The vocative case

This case is used for persons addressed in speech, or at the beginning of letters:

Dobar dan, gospodine Antiću

Good day, Mr Antić

Draga gospodo Nado, . . .¹

Dear 'Mrs Nada', . . .

¹ This is a useful intermediary stage between the formal **Gđa** + surname, and the more familiar use of the first name on its own. Of course there is no equivalent in English.

There are no vocative endings for neuter nouns or for the plurals of any gender. So, only two sets of endings have to be learned:

Masculine

hard consonants: **-e**, e.g. **gospodin, gospodine**;

soft consonants: **-u**, e.g. **prijatelj, prijatelju; Antić, Antiću**.

Feminine

Nouns ending in **-a**: **-o**, e.g. **gospoda, gospodo; Nada, Nado**.

Diminutives in **-ca**: **-ce**, e.g. **gospodića, gospodiće** 'Miss'; **Ankica, Ankice**. (These may be men's names with diminutive feminine forms: **Ivica, Ivice**.)

Nouns ending in a consonant: **-i**, e.g. **Oh, noći!**

Language in action

Examples of simple letters

- 1 To friends, informal:

<p>Dragi Vjerane, Ovdje je prekrasno. Šteta što i ti nisi ovdje. Pusu, Ljiljana</p>

(Dear Vjeran, It's lovely here. It's a shame you aren't here too.
Love, Ljiljana)

2 More formal, addressee slightly known:

Dragi gospodine Filipoviću,
Stižemo prvog srpnja. Veselimo
se skorom viđenju.
Srdačan pozdrav,
Vaši Tim i Anne Smith

(Dear Mr Filipović, We are arriving on the first of July. We are
looking forward to seeing you soon. Warm greetings/best wishes,
Tim and Anne Smith)

3 Addressee unknown or known only officially

Štovana gospođo Ivić,
Slobodna sam Vam se javiti u
vezi našeg boravka. Molim Vas da nam
rezervirate sobu za osmi mjesec.
Sa štovanjem,
Betty Jones

(Dear (lit. 'respected') Mrs Ivić, I am taking the liberty of writing
in connection with our stay. Please would you reserve a room for
the month of August. Yours sincerely, Betty Jones)

Exercise 4

Write a postcard from Mira, on holiday in Italy, to Ivan.

Word formation

Adjectives formed from proper nouns

All adjectives are written with a small letter, even when formed
from proper nouns:

Ovo je zagrebačka zračna luka

This is Zagreb airport

Ovo je hrvatska zastava

This is the Croatian flag

Volim londonske ulice

I like London streets

Exercise 5

Put these adjectives with the appropriate noun:

rimski (Rim 'Rome'), **bečki** (Beč 'Vienna'), **atlanski**, **švicarski**
(Švicarska 'Switzerland'), **jadranski** (Jadran 'Adriatic')
odrezak (snitzl, cutlet), **otok** (island), **forum**, **sat** (watch), **ocean**

Sentence building

Examples of questions and answers

Look at the following constructions. The translation is on page 38. Use it later to translate back into Croatian or Serbian (**ovo** 'this'; **to** 'that').

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| – Dobar dan, gospodine, je li ovo vaša putovnica? | – Je, to je moja putovnica. |
| – Je li ovo vaša torba? | – Ne, to nije moja torba. |
| – Jesu li to vaše stvari? | – Jesu, hvala! |
| – Mama, ovo je moja djevojka. | – Je li? Drago mi je, dušo. |
| – Je li ovo vaš sin? | – Je, zove se Janko. |
| – A da li su to vaše kćeri? | – Ne, to su moje unuke! |
| – Nije moguće! | – Jesu, vjerujte! |
| – Je li ovo Zagreb? | – Još nije, ovo je Ljubljana. |
| – Da li je ovo vaše sjedalo? | – Samo vi sjedite, ima mjesta. |

Double negative

The existence of two or more negative words in a sentence does not have the effect of making the sense positive. On the contrary, a negative pronoun such as **nitko** (no one) or **ništa** (nothing) requires a negative verb.

Nemamo ništa za prijaviti

We have nothing to declare

Ništa ne vidim kroz prozor

I don't see anything through the window

Nikad ne putujem autostopom (or Nikad ne autostopiram)

I never hitchhike

Exercise 6*

(a) Make sentences with the following nouns. Some are singular and some plural, so remember to adjust the possessive pronoun and verb accordingly. Notice that the nominative endings of the possessive pronoun **vaš** are the same as those of the nouns:

m. sg.	vaš	pl.	vaši
f. sg.	vaša	pl.	vaše

Model: (**torba**) Oprostite, gospodo, je li ovo vaša torba?
 (**putovnice**) Oprostite, gospodine, jesu li ovo vaše putovnice?

kišobran (umbrella)**stvari** (NB f. pl.)**kabanica** (raincoat)**šešir** (hat)**sat****prtljaga****sinovi****šljivovica****rukavice** (gloves)**novčanik** (wallet)

(b) Answer the following questions on Dialogue 1 at the beginning of the lesson:

- 1 Jesu li Alan i Nora prvi put u Zagrebu?
- 2 Je li zagrebačka zračna luka velika?
- 3 Što moraju pokazati?
- 4 Imaju li Alan i Nora što za prijaviti?
- 5 Gdje čeka sin gospodina Antića?¹

¹These endings are the case denoting possession: 'the son of Mr Antić'.

(c) Translate these questions into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 Is this Zagreb airport?
- 2 Is that customs control?
- 3 Have you anything to declare?
- 4 Where are the passports?
- 5 Have you got many things?
- 6 Is this your bag?
- 7 Where are the trolleys?
- 8 Must we show our passports?

(d) Supply the missing half of the dialogue.

- ANTIĆ: _____?
 CAMERON: Jesmo. Jako se veselimo
 ANTIĆ: _____?
 CAMERON: Da. Evo moje putovnice.
 ANTIĆ: _____?
 CAMERON: Ne, to nije moja torba.

Translation of questions and answers (see page 36)

- | | |
|---|---|
| Good morning, sir, is this your passport? | Yes, that is my passport. |
| Is this your bag? | No, that's not my bag. |
| Are these your things? | Yes, they are, thank you! |
| Mum, this is my girlfriend. | Is it? Pleased to meet you, dear. |
| Is this your son? | Yes, his name's Janko. |
| And are these your daughters? | No, they are my granddaughters! |
| It's not possible! | They are, believe me! |
| Is this your seat? | You sit there, there's (plenty of) room (lit. place). |

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (3)

The stewardess comes to wake Mark, who has slept through the plane's arrival in Zagreb

- Stjuardesa prilazi Marku.
 – Halo, gospodine, evo nas u Zagrebu!
 Marko se budi.
 – Zbilja? Krasno! Hvala!
 Uzima torbu i kišobran iz prtljažnice i ide prema izlazu iz zrakoplova.
 – Dobro došli u Zagreb! Do viđenja!
 – Hvala! Do viđenja!

prilaziti (imp. **prilazim**) 'to come up to, approach'; **Marku** (indirect object case) 'to Mark'; **buditi se** (imp. **budim se**) 'to wake up'; **zbilja!** 'really!'; **krasno** 'lovely, great'; **hvala** 'thank you'; **kišobran** 'umbrella'; **prtljažnica** 'luggage rack, locker, boot (of car)'; **ide** (from **ići** 'to go', **idem**); **prema** 'towards'; **izlaz** 'exit'; **dobro došli** 'welcome'; **do viđenja** 'goodbye'

4 Svatko ide na svoju stranu

Each goes his own way

In this lesson we will look at:

- accusative case
- accusative after certain prepositions
- genitive case
- **nema** + genitive
- prepositions

Dialogue 1

Odakle ste?

Where are you from?

As they wait for their luggage, the Camerons ask Mr Antić a bit about himself

ALAN: Jeste li vi iz Zagreba, gospodine Antiću?

ANTIĆ: Nisam, nego iz Karlovca, to je gradić nedaleko od Zagreba. Ali ostajem malo kod sina. Kamo vi sad idete? Imate li rezerviranu sobu?

ALAN: Imamo. Idemo u Hotel Palace. Mislim da je blizu auto-busnog kolodvora.

ANTIĆ: Je. Ostajete li u Zagrebu?

NORA: Nekoliko dana. Ovdje imamo prijatelje. Zatim idemo na more.

ANTIĆ: Želim vam ugodan boravak. Jako mi je drago što smo se upoznali.

NORA: I nama. Ako dođete u Englesku evo naše adrese.

ANTIĆ: Hvala vam, nikad se ne zna! Svako dobro, do viđenja!

ALAN and NORA: Do viđenja!

Vocabulary

autobusni	bus-station	nekoliko (+ G)	a few, some
kolodvor		nikad se ne zna	you never know (one never knows)
blizu	near (prep. + G; adv.)	od (+ G)	from
boravak	stay	ostajati (imp.)	to remain, stay
do viđenja	goodbye	ostajem	
evo (+ G)	here is, here are (cf. French <i>voici</i>)	prijatelj	friend
gradić	small town	rezervirati	to reserve
hvala	thank you	soba	room
ići (<i>idem</i>)	to go	svako dobro	all the best (lit. 'every good')
iz (+ G)	out of, from	svatko (m.)	everyone, each
kamo	where ('whither', with motion)	svoj	'one's own'
lako	easily	ugodan (<i>ugodna</i>)	pleasant
misliti (imp.)	to think	upoznati se (pf.)	to meet (this is the past tense: mi smo se upoznali)
mislim		zatim	then
more	sea		
naš	our		
nedaleko	not far		
nego	but (after negative statement)		

Language points

The accusative case (the direct object case)

This case is used if the question 'what' (**što**) or 'whom' (**koga**) can be asked after the verb in a sentence:

Ima veliki crni kišobran. Što ima? Kišobran.

He has a big black umbrella. He has what? An umbrella.

Vidim more. Što vidiš? More.

I see the sea. What do you see? The sea.

Formation of the accusative

Singular

Masculine inanimate nouns and neuter nouns. The accusative is the same as the nominative:

<i>N</i>	<i>A</i>
Ovo je kišobran	Imam kišobran
This is an umbrella	I have an umbrella
Ovo je pero	Vidim pero
This is a pen	I see the pen

Masculine animate nouns. The accusative of masculine nouns referring to animate beings is like the genitive ending we shall come to later in the lesson .

<i>N</i>	<i>A</i>
Ovo je moj sin	Vidim sina
This is my son	I see (my) son

Feminine nouns

(a) *Ending in a consonant.* The accusative is the same as the nominative:

<i>N</i>	<i>A</i>
Ovo je lijepa noć	Volim noć
This is a lovely night	I like the night

(b) *Ending in -a.* The accusative ending is made by removing the final **-a** and replacing it by **-u**:

<i>N</i>	<i>A</i>
Ovo je Korčula	Jako volim Korčulu
This is Korčula	I like Korčula very much
Ovo je moja torba	Imate li vi torbu?
This is my bag	Have you got a bag?

Exercise 1

1 Write sentences on the following models, using the nouns given below:

- (a) **Ovo je moj šešir. Imaš li ti šešir? Imam.**
This is my hat. Do you have a hat? I do.

kišobran**novčanik** (wallet)**bicikl****auto**¹**hotel**

¹ **auto** is masculine because it is short for **automobil**, ending in a consonant.

- (b) **Ovo more je lijepo. Svi volimo ovo more.**
This sea is lovely. We all love this sea.

selo**dijete****pismo****igralište****kupalište**²

² The ending **-ište**, which makes a neuter noun from a verb stem, denotes a place where the action of the verb is carried out: **igrati se** 'to play', **igralište** 'playground'; **kupati se** 'to bathe', **kupalište** 'bathing place'.

- (c) **Sutra dolazi moja sestra. Moraš upoznati moju sestru!**
Tomorrow my sister is coming. You must meet my sister!

djevojka majka kćer žena prijateljica (female friend)

Plural

Masculine. The accusative plural is formed by removing the final **-i** of the nominative plural and replacing it by **-e**:

*N**A***Ovdje su dućani dobri****Ne volim ove dućane**

The shops are good here

I don't like these shops

Take care with words in which the nominative plural **-i** has caused the final consonant of the stem to be altered, e.g.

putnik (N sg.) **putnici** (N pl.)but **vidim putnike** (A pl.) I see the passengers

– it is only **k + i** that causes the change to **-ci**. Other combinations with **-i** result in similar changes: e.g. **g + i** becomes **-zi**:

Ovo je moj kovčeg **Ovo su moji kovčezi**but **Nosim kovčege**

I am carrying the suitcases

Neuter. The accusative plural of neuter nouns is the same as the nominative plural:

<i>N</i>	<i>A</i>
Ovo su ugodna mala sela	Volim mala sela
These are pleasant little villages	I like little villages

Feminine. The accusative plural of feminine nouns is the same as the nominative plural, regardless of whether they end in a consonant or in **-a**:

<i>N</i>	<i>A</i>
To su naše stvari	Svi nosimo stvari
Those are our things	We are all carrying the things
To su naše torbe	Svi nosimo torbe
Those are our bags	We are all carrying bags

Exercise 2

1 Form sentences, according to the model, putting the nouns into the accusative singular case:

vaša torba:	Imam vašu torbu	
Your bag:	I have your bag	
vaš šešir	vaša prtljaga	vaša rukavica
vaša putovnica	vaš novčanik	vaše pero

2 As above, but this time put the nouns into the accusative *plural*:

naša stvar:	Oni nose naše stvari	
Our <i>thing</i> :	They are carrying our <i>things</i>	
naša torba	naš novčanik	naše pero
naša torba	naša cigareta	naš mantil

Sentence building

The accusative case after certain prepositions

The accusative case is used after certain prepositions. These include:

kroz 'through'	Pospani putnik gleda kroz prozor
	The sleepy passenger looks <i>through the window</i>

- Tko je kod tebe? – Zašto pitaš?
 – Pa tako.
 (Pauza)
 – Dakle, ne izlaziš? – Ne.
 – Dobro onda, ako je tako.
 Do viđenja. – Do viđenja.

2 Nekoliko dana kasnije. Kod Ivana zvoni telefon.

- Halo. – Jesi li ti, Ivane?
 – Jesam. – Ovdje Mira.
 – Zdravo. – Kako si?
 – Dobro. A ti? – Eto. Što je novo?
 – Ništa naročito. Tako.
 Sjedim, nešto čitam. – Je li?
 (Pauza)
 – Zašto zoveš, Miro? Što želiš? – Čuj, Ivane. Nemoj se tako ljutiti.
 – Ne ljutim se. – Ne javljaš se.
 – Želiš li da se javljam? – Pa, prijatelji smo, zar ne?
 – Jasno, prijatelji smo. – Opet se ljutiš?
 – Ne ljutim se. Nego, netko
 zove, moram ići. – Onda, zdravo.
 – Zdravo, Miro.

halo 'hello' (used only on the telephone); **slušaj** (imperative of **slušati**) 'listen!'; **raditi** 'to do, to make'; **društvo** 'company'; **pauza** 'pause'; **izići** 'to go out' (pf.; imp. **izlaziti**); **kod tebe** 'at your place'; **pitati** 'to ask'; **pa tako** lit. 'well, like that', i.e. 'no reason'; **dakle** 'so, therefore'; **nekoliko** 'some, a few'; **kasnije** 'later'; **zvoniti** 'to ring'; **eto** 'well', inconclusive reply; **što ima novo** 'what's new?'; **naročito** 'particular'; **sjediti** 'to sit'; **čuj** 'listen'; **nemoj se ljutiti** 'don't be angry'; **prijatelj** 'friend'; **jasno** 'clearly, of course'; **opet** 'again'; **nego** 'but' (after negative statement); **zove** (3rd pers. sg. of **zvati**) 'calls, is calling'; **onda** 'then'

Exercise 4

- (a) Write a telephone conversation between two people discussing what to do: whether to go out, stay in or visit friends.
- (b) You are writing to a friend. Describe your proposed itinerary through Croatia, using **idem** (I am going), **zatim** (then). Remember to use **u** for towns and **na** for islands.

Language points

The genitive case (the possessive case)

Without a preposition, the genitive case is used primarily to denote possession:

Ovo je glavna ulica Zagreba

This is the main street *of Zagreb*

To je šešir moje žene

That is *my wife's* hat

It is used also after a large number of prepositions. These generally denote origin, distance or removal from somewhere or something.

iz + G 'out of, from'

Jeste li iz Zagreba?

Are you *from Zagreb*?

Izvadi kabanicu iz ormara

Take the coat *out of the wardrobe*

blizu + G 'near' (i.e. not distant from)

Hotel je blizu autobusne postaje

The hotel is *near the bus stop*

Formation of the genitive

Singular

Masculine. Genitive ends in **-a**:

To je torba gospodina Antića

That's Mr Antić's bag

Neuter. Genitive ends in **-a** as with masculine nouns:

more: grad je nedaleko od mora

The town is not far *from the sea*

Feminine:

(a) Nouns ending in **-a** have genitive in: **-e**:

Engleska: Mi smo iz Engleske

We are *from England*

(b) Nouns ending in a consonant have genitive in: **-i**:

noć: **Poslije te lijepo noći . . .**
 After *that beautiful night . . .*

Plural

The genitive plural for all genders is **-a** except for feminine nouns ending in a consonant, which have the genitive plural ending **-i**.

Sentence building

Structures using the genitive case

Nema, third person singular of **nemati**, meaning 'he has not' or 'there is not':

Nema nikoga doma
 There is no one at home

Nema ni novca ni novčanika
 He has neither money nor wallet

(2) **Evo** + G: 'here is' or 'here are':

Evo postaje
 Here is the stop!

Evo naše adrese
 Here is our address

Exercise 5

(a) Write sentences on the following model, using the nouns given below:

sin: **Ovo je moj sin. Dozvolite da Vam predstavim svog sina!**
 This is my son. Allow me to introduce my son to you!

brat prijatelj mladić muž otac¹

¹ this word has various unpredictable forms which must be learned: G sg. **oca**; N pl. **očevi**; G pl. **očeva**.

(b) Form questions, according to the model:

Zagreb: **Jeste li iz Zagreba?**
 Are you from Zagreb?

London Pariz Rijeka Rim Venecija Sarajevo Dubrovnik

(c) Supply answers to these questions, according to the model:

Gdje je kišobran? Evo kišobrana!

Where is the umbrella? Here is the umbrella!

Gdje je postaja? Gdje su torbe?

Gdje je putovnica?

Gdje je hotel? Gdje su stvari?

Gdje je prtljaga?

Gdje je šešir? Gdje je carinska kontrola? Gdje su kolica?

Gdje je novčanik?

Language in action

Questions and answers

(The translation is on p. 50)

Drivers are talking in a motel on the motorway near Stuttgart.

- | | |
|--|---|
| – Odakle dolazite? | – Dolazimo iz Londona. |
| – Putujete li u Austriju? | – Ne, putujemo u Hrvatsku. |
| – Krasno! Poznajete li Hrvatsku? | – Još ne, ali imamo tamo prijatelje. |
| – Idete li na more? | – Svakako, idemo u Dubrovnik, pa onda na Korčulu. |
| – Ah, Korčula je prekrasna! Poznajete li našu obalu? | – Ne, ali imamo prospekte. Odakle vi dolazite? |
| – Dolazim iz Pariza. Tamo radim. | – A idete li sada kući? |
| – Da, idem u Zagorje, u malo selo. | – Mora da je tamo lijepo! |
| – Da! Treba i taj kraj vidjeti. | – Slijedeći put! Želite li nešto |
| – Vrlo rado. Pa onda ravno na spavanje! | popiti? |
| | – Laku noć! |

Exercise 6*

(a) Answer these questions on Dialogue 1:

- 1 Je li Miroslav Antić iz Zagreba?
- 2 Zašto ne ide sad u Karlovac?



Tomislav Krizman: *Pogled na Zagreb–Hrvatska*

- 3 Kamo idu Alan i Nora?
- 4 Gdje se nalazi¹ hotel Palace?
- 5 Ostaju li u Zagrebu?
- 6 Kamo idu poslije Zagreba?

¹ **nalaziti se** 'to be situated'

(b) Translate into Croatian or Serbian:

VJEKOSLAV: Good afternoon,¹ I am Vjekoslav Kovačić.

JOHN: Pleased to meet you. I am John Green.

VJEKOSLAV: Are you from England? You speak Croatian well.

JOHN: Thank you. Do you speak English?

VJEKOSLAV: Only a little. Are you staying in Zagreb?

JOHN: For a few days. Do you know where the Palace hotel is?

VJEKOSLAV: I think it's near the station. These are the outskirts of Zagreb.

JOHN: Here we are! Is this your bag?

VJEKOSLAV: Yes. Thank you. I am glad that we met.

JOHN: So am I.² All the best. Goodbye!

VJEKOSLAV: Goodbye!

¹ Use **dobro jutro**; ² **I meni**

(c) Supply the missing half of the dialogue in the bus from the airport:

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Da, ovo je sad predgrade Zagreba.

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Nisam, nego iz Rijeke. A vi, jeste li iz Londona?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Imate li rezerviran hotel?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: To je dobar hotel. Ostajete li u Zagrebu?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Želim vam ugodan boravak. Drago mi je što smo se upoznali.

CAMERON: _____

Translation of questions and answers (p. 48)

Where are you travelling from? We're on our way from London.

Are you travelling to Austria? No, we're travelling to Croatia.

Lovely! Do you know Croatia? Not yet, but we have friends there.

Are you going to the sea? Certainly, we're going to Dubrovnik, and then to Korčula.

Ah, Korčula is beautiful! Do you know our coast?

No, but we have brochures. Where are you on your way from?

I am travelling from Paris.

I work there.

And are you going home now?

Yes, I'm going to Zagorje, to a little village.

It must be lovely there!

It is. You should see that region as well.

Next time! Would you like a drink?

With pleasure. And then straight to bed!

Good night!

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (4)

Mark leaves the plane and arrives in the terminal

Mark polako izlazi iz zrakoplova. Prekrasan je dan u Zagrebu. Osjeća se glupo što nosi kišobran. 'Kao pravi Englez', misli. Brzo nalazi svoju prtljagu. Zaboravlja tražiti kolica. Nosi torbu kroz carinsku kontrolu. Srećom nije teška. Nema što prijaviti. Izlazi kroz vrata.

polako 'slowly'; **izlazi** (**izlaziti**, imp.) 'he goes out'; **prekrasan** 'beautiful'; **osjećati se** (imp. **osjećam se**) 'to feel'; **glup** 'stupid' (**glupo** is the adverb); **što** 'that, because'; **nositi** 'to carry'; **'kao pravi Englez'** 'like a real Englishman'; **brzo** 'quickly'; **nalaziti** 'to find'; **svoj** 'his (own)'; **zaboravljati** 'to forget'; **tražiti** 'to search, look for'; **srećom** 'luckily'; **težak** (f. **teška**) 'heavy'.

5 Dolazak u hotel

Arrival at the hotel

In this lesson we will look at:

- the dative case
- the prepositional (locative) case
- the instrumental case
- a telephone conversation

Dialogue 1

U hotelu

In the hotel

The Camerons arrive at their hotel and go to their room

Na recepciji

RECEPCIONER: Dobar dan, izvolite.

ALAN: Dobar dan. Mi smo Alan i Nora Cameron.

RECEPCIONER: Imate li rezervacije?

ALAN: Imamo, za dvokrevetnu sobu.

RECEPCIONER: Samo trenutak. Evo. Vi ste u sobi 25 na drugom katu. Molim vaše putovnice. Evo vam ključ. Dječak ce vam ponijeti stvari. Idite liftom. Soba je na lijevoj stroni hodnika kad izađete iz lifta.

NORA: Hvala. Ključ dajte mome suprugu: ja idem stepenica ma jer ne volim liftove.

ALAN: Torbu možeš dati dječaku.

U sobi

Alan otvara vrata; tada stiže i Nora.

NORA:	Da vidim. Oh, kakva lijepa velika soba! Ima i lijep pogled na park!
DJEČAK:	Stvari su vam ovdje u ormaru. A u kupaoni ima tuš, umivaonik i WC. Trebate li još nešto?
ALAN:	Ne, hvala. Sve je u redu.

Vocabulary

će ponijeti (future)	will take	liftom	by lift
dječak	boy	lijevi	left
dolazak	arrival (from dolaziti)	molim	please (also molim Vas)
drugi	second	mome (D of moj)	to my
dvadeset pet	twenty-five	možeš (2nd pers. sg. of moći)	you can
dvokrevetna soba	double room	ormar	wardrobe
idite (imperative of ići)	go	pogled	view
izaći (pf., izadem)	to go/come out	na recepciji	at reception
izvolite	(there is no exact equivalent in English. Used when offering something: 'Please, help yourself.' Here: 'May I help you?')	red	order; u redu 'all right'
jer	for, because	rezervacija	reservation
još	else, more	stepenica	stair
još ne	not yet	stizati (imp. stižem)	to arrive
kat	floor, storey	suprug	husband (f. supruga)
ključ	key	sve	everything
kupaona	bathroom	tad, tada	then
		trebati	to need
		trenutak	moment
		tuš	shower
		umivaonik	wash basin
		uskoro	soon
		vam (D of vi)	to you

Language points

The dative case (the indirect object case)

The dative is used without a preposition, mainly to indicate the indirect object of a verb. In English this would generally be denoted by the preposition 'to'.

Govorim čovjeku

I speak *to the man*

Dajem dječaku prtljagu

I give the luggage *to the boy*

In English the preposition 'to' may be omitted, but the sense of 'indirectness' remains:

Daje ženi ključ

He gives *his wife* the key

('the key' here answers the question 'what does he give?'; 'his wife' answers the question 'to whom?')

Govorim policajcu istinu

I tell *the policeman* the truth

Speaking to and giving to are the most common usages of the dative case, but there are in Croatian and Serbian several instances of verbs which express related ideas, but where the need for the dative case may not be so immediately obvious:

pomagati (imp.), **pomoći** to help (to give help to)

Djeca pomažu majci

The children help *(their) mother*

obećavati (imp.), **obećati** to promise (to give a promise to . . .)

Djevojčica obećaje majci da nikada neće pušiti

The girl promises *her mother* that she will never smoke

vjerovati (imp.), **povjerovati** to believe (to give one's trust to . . .)

Moraš vjerovati dječaku; on govori istinu

You must believe *the boy*; he is telling the truth

The ending for masculine and neuter nouns is **-u**, plural **-ima**. Feminine nouns ending in **-a**: final **-a** becomes **-i**; feminine nouns ending in a consonant: **i** is added plural: **-a** nouns: **-ama**; consonant: **-ima**

Exercise 1

Supply the dative of the following nouns according to the model:

(a) *recepconer*: **Dajem putovnicu recepconeru**

Gospodin Antić Nora. Sestra Muž. Službenik

(b) *carinik*: **Govorimo cariniku na hrvatskom**

sin otac majka (*NB k + i becomes ci*) **gospođa Ana djeca**
(f. sg. collective plural of **dijete**)

The prepositional (locative) case 1

You will be relieved to learn that the endings of this case are identical to those of the dative. Unlike the dative, however, it is always used with a preposition, which is why it is called the 'prepositional' case. One of its most frequent uses is to express *location*. Indeed, the case is sometimes called the locative case.

You remember that the accusative case must be used after verbs describing motion: (accusative) **Alan i Nora idu u hotel**. But a different case, the prepositional (locative), must be used to describe static location: (prepositional) **Alan i Nora su u hotelu**. Compare

(A) **Putujemo u Zagreb**

We are travelling *to Zagreb*

(P) **Ostajemo 3 dana u Zagrebu**

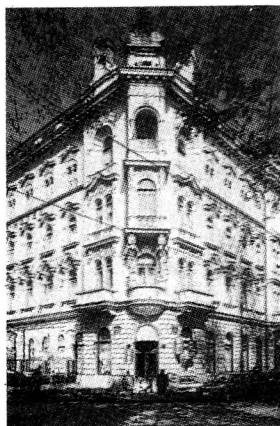
We are staying three days *in Zagreb*

Exercise 2

Supply the prepositional case for the following nouns, making sentences using the verb **biti**, according to the model:

hotel, ja: **Ja sam u hotelu.**

Vlak, ti more, oni selo, mi kofer, to Zagreb, vi

**Hotel****“PALACE” (A)**

Srossmayerov trg 10,

tel. 275-611

fax. 275-870

Sobe: 1/1 170 – 190 DEM

(Rooms) 1/2 230 – 250 DEM

DRAGI GOSTI!

Hotel je otvoren 1891. g., a dogradnja novog dijela izvršena je 1987. g., kade je rekonstruiran i stari dio. Hotel ima 125 soba, 210 kreveta, 5 apartmana, restoran (110), dvoranu za svečane prijeme (120), bankete, coctaille, svadbe, kongrese, salone (2), kavanu s terasom,

intercontinental shop, TV salon, casino. Sve su sobe komforne i klimatizirane sa TV, mini barom, s direktnim biranjem telefonskih brojeva.

The prepositional (locative) case 2

The prepositional of feminine nouns:

Ovo je lijepa soba

This is a nice room

Alan i Nora su sada u sobi

Alan and Nora are now *in the room*

Sarajevo je u Bosni

Sarajevo is *in Bosnia*

Ljubljana je u Sloveniji

Ljubljana is *in Slovenia*

Rim je u Italiji

Rome is *in Italy*

putovnica je u torbi

The passport is *in the bag*

tuš je u kupaoni.

The shower is *in the bathroom*

NB With the prepositional singular of feminine nouns ending in **-a**, there are two points to be wary of:

(a) Certain consonants are subject to changes when they are followed by **-i**. (We have already met this with the masculine plural of **putnik**, **putnici**.)

k + i	ci	ruka (hand)	u ruci
		banka (bank)	u banci
g + i	-zi	knjiga (book)	u knjizi

(See also Appendix, section 6.)

(b) The names of certain countries, etc., are not in fact nouns, but adjectives (**Engleska zemlja**, 'the English land' etc.) and their declension is different. These words are easily identified, because they end in **-ska** or **-čka**. The prepositional singular ends in **-oj**:

Engleska	u Engleskoj	Njemačka	u Njemačkoj
Hrvatska	u Hrvatskoj	Grčka	u Grčkoj

Exercise 3

Form sentences according to the models given. (*NB* **ići u + accusative** because the verb expresses movement; **ostajati u + prepositional** because the sense is static.)

Zagreb: **Sutra idemo u Zagreb. Ostajemo tjedan dana u Zagrebu.**

Tomorrow we're going to Zagreb. We're staying a week in Zagreb.

Dubrovnik Karlovac Rijeka Split Opatija

Engleska: **Sutra idemo u Englesku. Ostajemo tjedan dana u Engleskoj.**

Grčka Bugarska Njemačka Irska Francuska.

Dialogue 2

Ljubavna priča (5)

Ivan and Mira meet in the street

- O, zdravo, Mira? Kako si? Što radiš?
- Dobro sam. Idem k Nadi.

- Lijepo izgledaš. Nova haljina?
- Ma ne! Nosim je godinama!
- Lijepo ti stoji. Mogu li te pratiti do Nade?
- Ako hoćeš. Što radiš ovih dana?
- Ništa. Sjedim doma.
- Što ne izlaziš?
- Znaš da ne želim izaći bez tebe.
- O, Ivane . . .

Ivan oprezno uzima Miru za ruku. Ona ništa ne govori.

Hođaju tako neko vrijeme bez riječi.

- Je li, Miro, kamo idemo? Ovo nije put do Nade.
- Oh, imaš pravo. Nisam primijetila!
- Čeka li te ona?
- Ne.
- Onda u redu. Možemo li malo prošetati?
- Možemo.

Pauza. Ivan se zaustavlja i gleda Miri u oči.

- Kako je odjednom sve jednostavno! Drago mi je što smo tu, skupa.
- I meni.

izgledati 'to look, appear'; **novi** 'new'; **haljina** 'dress'; **nositi** (imp.) 'to carry, to wear'; **godina** 'year' (**godinama** (instr. pl. 'for years'); **stojati nekome dobro** 'to suit someone'; **pratiti** 'to accompany'; **oprezno** 'cautiously'; **uzimati za ruku** 'to take by the hand'; **neko vrijeme** 'for a time'; **riječ** (f.) 'word'; **primijetiti** 'to notice'; **čekati** 'to wait'; **dolaziti** 'come'; **prije podne** 'in the morning'; **točno** 'exactly'; **zaustavljati se** 'to stop'; **jednostavno** 'simple'; **skupa** 'together'; **i meni** 'me too' (dative of **ja**, 'I').

Exercise 4

Write a telephone conversation between two people discussing what to do: whether to stay in, go out somewhere or visit friends.

Dialogue 3

Razgovor u vlaku

Conversation in a train

The translation is on p. 61.

Two passengers travelling by train through Austria discuss their journeys.

- Jesmo li stigli u Sloveniju? – Ne, još uvijek smo u Austriji.
 – A sada, jesmo li u Sloveniji? – Jesmo, ostajete li ovdje?
 – Ne, idemo u Grčku. – Jeste li već bili u Grčkoj?
 – Nismo. Bili smo u Turskoj. – Je li? I ja bih voljela ići u Tursku.
 – Putujete li vi u Zagreb? – Da, stanujem u Zagrebu.
 – Da li ste bili u Londonu? – Još ne, ali nadam se da ću uskoro otići u London.
 – Poznajete li cijeli Balkan? – Ne baš cijeli, ali prilično sam putovala po Balkanu.
 – U koje zemlje najčešće idete? – Pa, najviše idem u Hrvatsku, u Dalmaciju. Onda idem u Sloveniju na skijanje. Idem ponekad u Bosnu i u Srbiju. Bila sam jednom u Makedoniji i u Crnoj Gori.
 – A zamislite, ja nikad nisam bio u Škotskoj! – Ma nemojte! A u Irskoj?
 – Samo jednom. A u Wales idem često. – Mora da je jako lijepo u Walesu.
 – Da, ali ima tako mnogo lijepih krajeva u svijetu, čovjek ne može stići sve vidjeti. – Imate pravo, a često putujemo više po dalekim zemljama nego po susjednim!

Language points 3

The instrumental case

There is one more case to be learned. Its use is quite straightforward and we have already seen it in action. This is the instrumental case, used to express the means by which an action is carried out:

Putujem vlakom

I travel *by train*

Idemo liftom

We go *by lift*

Pismo ide zračnom poštom

The letter goes *by air mail*

The instrumental is also used after certain prepositions:

s, sa 'with' **Alan dolazi liftom sa stvarima**
Alan is coming in the lift *with the things*

Singular. The instrumental ending is the same for all genders: **-om**:

Putujem sa sinom, sa sestrom i s¹ djetetom
I am travelling with (my) son, (my) sister and the
child

¹ s is the norm; **sa** may be used before words beginning with s or z.

Plural. The endings are the same as for the dative and prepositional cases:

masculine and neuter: **-ima**, e.g. **Idem s prijateljima** 'I am going with friends'; and feminine ending in consonant: **Putujem sa stvarima** 'I am travelling with (the) things.'

feminine ending in **-a**: **-ama**, e.g. **Putujem s djevojkama** 'I am talking with (my) friend.'

NB The masculine singular instrumental ending **-om** changes to **-em** after 'soft' consonants: **Razgovaram s prijateljem**. 'I am talking with (my) friend.'

For exceptions, and a complete list of noun declensions, see Appendix, section 1.

Exercise 5*

(a) Answer the questions using the appropriate means of transport:

Example: Idemo tramvajem We go by tram (tram: **tramvaj**)

- 1 Kako idete u Francusku?
- 2 Kako idete u Ameriku?
- 3 Kako idete preko Atlantika?
- 4 Kako idete na posao? (to work)
- 5 Kako idete u grad?
- 6 Kako idete u Svemir? (space)

brod vlak bicikl zrakoplov raketa auto

(b) Select from the right-hand column the most appropriate endings to these sentences:

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1 Nije daleko do hotela, | molim vaše putovnice |
| 2 Nemamo rezervacije, | stvari su u ormaru |
| 3 Ima samo jedna slobodna ¹
soba, | treba ići stepenicama |

¹**slobodan** 'free'

- 4 Ako imate mnogo prtljage, nalazi se na trećem katu
 5 Kad izađete iz lifta, i ima lijep pogled na park
 6 Na žalost² lift ne radi, trebamo dvokrevetnu sobu
 7 Evo vam ključ, ima tuš, umivaonik i WC
 8 Soba je velika, dječak će vam ponijeti stvari
 9 Ako trebaš kišobran, idemo pješice³
 10 Kupaona je lijepa, soba je na lijevoj strani hodnika.

² **na žalost** 'unfortunately'; ³ **pješice** 'on foot'

(c) Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 Imaju li Alan i Nora rezervacije u hotelu?
- 2 Kakvu¹ sobu trebaju?
- 3 Gdje se nalazi soba?
- 4 Što daju recepcioneru?
- 5 Kako idu do sobe?
- 6 Voli li Nora liftove?
- 7 Tko otvara vrata?
- 8 Je li soba mala?
- 9 Ima li pogled na kolodvor?²
- 10 Trebaju li jos nešto?

¹ **kakav** 'what kind of'; ² **kolodvor** 'railway station'

(d) Translate into Croatian or Serbian

I am going to Zagreb. I am travelling by plane. I need a hotel near the bus stop. I am not carrying much luggage so I can go to the hotel on foot. I need a single room.¹ I want a large room with a view of the park. I want to be on the first floor because I don't like lifts. I need a bathroom with a shower, WC and washbasin.

¹ **jednokrevetna soba**

Translation of Dialogue 3 (p. 59)

- Have we arrived in Slovenia? No, we are still in Austria.
 And (what about) now, are we in Slovenia? Yes, are you staying here?
 No, we are going to Greece. Have you been in Greece already?
 No. We've been in Turkey. Have you? I'd like to go to Turkey too.
 Are you travelling to Zagreb? Yes, I live in Zagreb.

Have you been in London?

Not yet, but I hope that I'll go to London soon.

Do you know the whole of the Balkans?

Not exactly the whole, but I've travelled quite a lot in the Balkans.

Which countries do you go to most often?

Well, I go most to Croatia, to Dalmatia, then I go to Slovenia to ski. I sometimes go to Bosnia and Serbia. I've only been once in Macedonia and Montenegro.

Imagine, I've never been in Scotland!

You don't say! And in Ireland?

Only once. But I go to Wales often.

It must be very beautiful in Wales.

Yes, it is. But there are so many beautiful areas in the world – one can't manage to see everything.

You're right, but we often travel more in distant countries than in neighbouring ones.

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (5)

Mark meets his colleague, Jasna, with whom he is to work on his visit to Croatia.

U zračnoj luci, Mark Dunlop se upoznaje s kolegicom s kojom treba raditi tijekom boravka u Zagrebu.

- Dobar dan! Vi ste Mark Dunlop?
- Jesam! Dobar dan! A vi ste?
- Ja sam Jasna Culek.
- Drago mi je!
- Dobro došli u Zagreb!
- Hvala! Baš se veselim!
- Sigurno ste umorni. Izvolite ući u auto. Idemo u vaš hotel.

-
- Nisam umoran, ali želim vidjeti hotel. Hvala.
 - Molim!

kolega, kolegica 'colleague'; **s kojom** 'with whom' (**koji, koja** 'who'); **trebati** 'to have to' ('should', 'ought'); **tijekom** + G 'in the course of'; **dobro došli** 'welcome' (pl.)
sigurno 'surely'; **molim** 'please', also used as a response to **hvala**

6 Razgovor o stanu

Conversation about a flat

In this lesson we will look at:

- adjectives
- the nominative case of adjectives
- vocabulary about flats and furniture

Dialogue 1

Poziv na večeru

Invitation to dinner

The Camerons' friends Slavko and Marija invite them home to dinner

ALAN: Halo, Alan Cameron na telefonu.

SLAVKO: Zdravo, Alane, dobro došao! Ovdje Slavko.

ALAN: Slavko! Gdje si?

SLAVKO: U hotelu sam, na recepciji. Pozivamo Vas na večeru. Jeste li spremni? Marija nas čeka kod kuće.

ALAN: Jesmo, evo, sad ćemo sići. Zdravo!

Kod Slavka i Marije

NORA: Kakav lijep stan, Marija! Prostran je, udoban i svijetao. Zadovoljni ste, je li?

MARIJA: Jesmo, i mi smatramo da je lijep. I dovoljno je velik za nas, sad kad djeca više nisu doma.

NORA: Tko je taj lijepi mladić na slici? Nemoj mi reći da je to Tomislav!

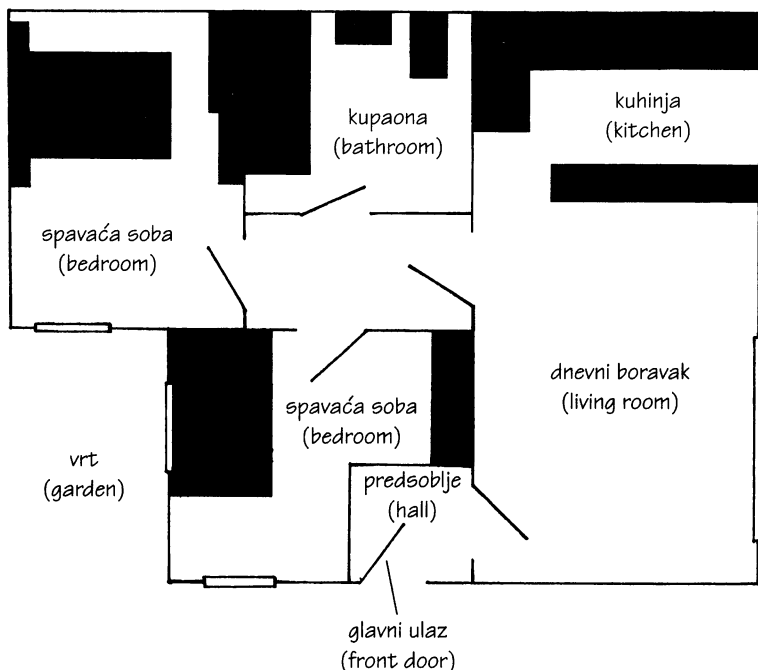
MARIJA: Pa je, zamisli! A ova elegantna mlada dama je Ivana. Dođite da vam pokažemo stan. Ovo je dnevna soba, tu su dvije male spavaće sobe, a ondje su kuhinja i kupatona.

ALAN: Imate i prekrasan balkon, pun cvijeća.

MARIJA: Da, možemo tamo malo i posjediti, dok nas Slavko služi nekim domaćim pićem. Izvolite!

Vocabulary

balkon	balcony	pozivati (imp., pozivam)	to invite
cvijeće (n., coll.)	flowers	prostran	spacious
čekati (imp.)	to wait	prekrasan	beautiful
dama	lady	pun	full
djeca (pl. of dijete 'child'; djeca has f. sg. form)	children	reći (pf. rečem)	to say
dnevna soba	living (lit. day) room	sići (pf. siđem)	to go/come down
dobro došao	welcome (f. dobro došla , pl. dobro došli)	slika	picture
doći (pf. dođem)	to come	služiti (imp.)	to serve (NB + A of person served and I of article served)
doma	at home	smatrati (imp.)	to consider
domaći	homemade, local	spavaća soba	bedroom
dovoljan (f. dovoljna)	sufficient	spreman (f. spremna)	ready
dvije (f.)	two (m. dva)	stan	flat
gdje	where	svijetao (f. svijetla)	bright
kuhinja	kitchen	taj (m.; f. ta ; n. to)	that
lijep	beautiful, nice	tamo	there
mali	small	tu	here
mlad	young	udoban (f. udobna)	comfortable
neki	some	večera	dinner, evening meal
ondje	over there	više	more (comp. of mnogo)
ova	this (m. ovaj)	zadovoljan	satisfied
ovdje	here	zamisliti (pf.)	to imagine
piće	drink	zvoniti (imp.)	to ring
pokazati (pf. pokažem)	to show		
posjediti (pf., posjedim)	to sit for a while		



Language points

Adjectives 1

Like nouns, adjectives have three genders, singular and plural forms and case endings which, unfortunately, differ somewhat from those of the nouns. Adjectives must agree in all respects with the nouns they qualify.

Masculine: nominative case

Most, but not all, masculine singular adjectives have an additional dimension: they may be definite or indefinite. The use of these forms corresponds roughly to the idea of definiteness or indefiniteness conveyed by the English articles.

Imate lijep stan (indef.)
Taj lijepi (def.) **stan je**
udoban (indef.)

You have *a nice* flat
 That *nice* flat is *comfortable*

Taj udobni (def.) **stan je** That *comfortable* flat is *spacious*
prostran (indef.)

The definite form ends in **-i**. There are certain situations in which it must be used: after demonstrative and possessive pronouns; as in English, once the subject has been mentioned.

The indefinite form must be used when the adjective is the complement of **biti**:

Taj putnik je mlad
 That passenger is *young*

but **Mladi putnik je umoran**
 The young passenger is *tired*

Do not be too alarmed by this additional complication: the definite adjective differs from the indefinite only in the nominative, genitive and dative/prepositional cases. What is more, the rule is strictly applied only in situations such as those mentioned here. The indefinite form ends either in a consonant or in **-o** which is derived from **-l**. This **-l** is present in the other genders and all cases other than masculine nominative.

Taj čovjek je debeo
 That man is *fat*

Moja mačka je debela
 My cat is *fat*

Vi niste debeli
 You are not *fat*

The masculine plural ends in **-i**. There is no difference between indefinite and definite forms.

Debeli ljudi su često veseli
 Fat people are often cheerful

Ti putnici su debeli
 Those passengers are fat

Final -o of masculine adjectives and 'mobile a'

The final **-o** of masculine adjectives is always preceded by a vowel. If the stem does not otherwise contain a vowel before the **-l** from which the **-o** is derived, something known as mobile **a** is inserted. For a general note on mobile **a** see Appendix, section 5. Many

indefinite masculine adjectives may have mobile **a** inserted between the final two consonants of the nominative singular. This is to ease pronunciation. The **a**, which is only added for convenience when necessary, disappears in the other cases and other genders.

On je dobar čovjek

He is a good man (person)

Oni su dobri ljudi

They are good people

To je dobra riba

That's a good fish

Ovo je dobro vino

This is a good wine

When you learn a new adjective with indefinite masculine nominative ending in **a** + *consonant*, check in a dictionary to see whether this is a mobile **a**. In exercises in this book such adjectives will be marked with an asterisk.

Exercise 1

(a) Supply the definite form of the following masculine adjectives, as in the example.

Taj student je mlad.

Mladi student je ovdje.

Moj kišobran je crn.

_____ kišobran je ovdje.

Putnik je umoran*.

_____ putnik je ovdje.

Vaš pas je lijep.

_____ pas je ovdje.

Ovaj krevet je velik

_____ krevet je ovdje.

(b) Supply the indefinite form, as in the example.

Imate prostrani stan.

Vas stan je prostran.

Volim taj lijepi balkon.

Taj balkon je _____

Gledam kroz veliki prozor.

Prozor je _____

On ima crni šešir

Šešir je _____

Veseli putnik pjeva.

Putnik je _____

Adjectives 2

Neuter: nominative case

(There is an indefinite form, but only of the genitive and dative/prepositional cases.)

nominative singular ending: **-o**, e.g. **lijepo, veliko, dobro**; or, after soft consonants: **-e**, e.g. **domaće**;

nominative plural ending: **-a**, e.g. **lijepa, velika, dobra**.

jadransko more
the Adriatic sea

mala dalmatinska sela
small Dalmatian villages

domaće vino
local wine

plitvička jezera
the Plitvice lakes

Feminine: nominative case

nominative singular ending: **-a**, e.g. **lijepa, velika, dobra**;

nominative plural ending: **-e**, e.g. **lijepa, velika, dobra**.

Voda je topla
The water is warm

Djevojke su umorne
The girls are tired

lijepa dalmatinska noć
a beautiful Dalmatian night

Prostrane sobe su udobne
Spacious rooms are comfortable

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with an appropriate adjective from the list below. Remember to alter the ending to agree with the noun.

- 1 Domaće vino je jako ____.
- 2 Šešir je ____ a rukavice su ____ (**rukavice** 'gloves')
- 3 Taj ____ kofer je kod momka. (**kofer** 'suitcase')
- 4 Pogled iz naše sobe je vrlo ____.
- 5 Sobe u stanu su ____.
- 6 Ta ____ mlada dama je naša kći. (**kći** 'daughter')
- 7 ____ sobe su na prvom katu.
- 8 Šljivovica je ____ piće.
- 9 Kuhinja je ____, ali dovoljno ____ za nas.
- 10 Sobe imaju mnogo prozora, jako su ____.

malen	svijetao*	spavaći	dobar
elegantan*	lijep	prostran	crn
velik	bijel	jak (strong)	

Dialogue 2

Ljubavna priča (6)

- Što radiš večeras, Miro? –pitao je odjednom Ivan.
- Ništa naročito. Dogovorila sam se s Nadom da se nađemo s nekim njenim prijateljima u gradu. Zašto pitaš?
- Dolazi mi bratić. Stariji je od mene, tek je došao s mora. Živi na jednom otoku. Nikad nije bio u Zagrebu pa sam mu htio pokazati grad.
- Pa onda, pridružite nam se, imamo zgodno društvo i uvijek se veselimo novim znancima.
- Važi. Ja ga moram poslije podne dočekati na kolodvoru i odvesti kući. Dođite u 6 uvečer pred gradsku kavanu.
- U redu. Ja sad zaista moram k Nadi. Vidimo se.
- Bog!

Mladi ljudi su se poljubili, kao da ništa nije bilo.

naročito 'specially, in particular'; **dogovoriti se** (pf.) 'to arrange'; **naći se** 'to meet'; **njen** 'her'; **stariji** 'older'; **tek** 'just'; **živjeti (živism)** 'to live'; **otok** 'island'; **pokazati** (pf.) 'to show'; **pridružiti se** (+ D) 'to join (a person or group)'; **veseliti se** (imp.) (+ D) 'to enjoy, look forward to'; **poznaničnik** 'acquaintance'; **važi** 'agreed'; **dočekati** (pf.) 'to wait for, meet'; **poslije podne** 'in the afternoon'; **odvesti** (pf.) 'to take (away, of people)'; **kući** (D) 'home'; **u redu** 'all right'; **zaista** 'really'

Exercise 3*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 That Scotsman is handsome.
- 2 Irishwomen are beautiful.
- 3 Is your (vaša) room comfortable?
- 4 The plane is comfortable.
- 5 Is the bus-stop near?
- 6 Have you got the big black umbrella?
- 7 Dalmatian women are beautiful and elegant.
- 8 Is your bag black?
- 9 Isn't the view from the balcony beautiful?
- 10 Zagreb is a pleasant small town.
- 11 Old Zagreb is small but beautiful.
- 12 Is the 'Palace' a good hotel?
- 13 It is not a big hotel, but it is comfortable.
- 14 Hvar is a beautiful island.
- 15 That is our big son, do you see through the window?
- 16 He can carry the big black bag.

- 17 This is the hotel; you see that it is pleasant.
 18 The double room is not very big.
 19 But the room is comfortable and has a nice view of the park.
 20 The passengers are tired and want to sleep.

Language points

Adverbs

As we saw in Lesson 2 many adverbs are the neuter nominative singular of adjectives:

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Adverbial use</i>	
dobar	dobro	Dobro došli!	Welcome! (lit. well come)
lijep	lijepo	Soba je lijepo namještena	The room is nicely furnished
mali	malo	On je malo umoran	He is a little tired
lak	lako	Lako možemo naći hotel	We can easily find the hotel
prekrasan	prekrasno	Večera prekrasno miriše!	Dinner smells wonderful!

Vocabulary building

Kuća, stan, pokućstvo *'house, flat, furniture'*

jednokatnica 'one-storey house'; **dvokatnica** 'two-storey house'; **zid** 'wall'; **krov** 'roof'; **vrata** 'door'; **prozor** 'window'; **dimnjak** 'chimney' (**dim** 'smoke'); **stambena zgrada** 'block of flats'
ulazna vrata 'front door'; **predsoblje** 'vestibule'; **hodnik** 'hall, corridor'; **dnevna soba** (or **dnevni boravak**) 'living room'; **blagovaonica** 'dining room'; **kuhinja** 'kitchen'; **spavaća soba** 'bedroom'; **kupaona** 'bathroom'
stol 'table'; **stolica** 'chair'; **naslonjač** 'armchair'; **tepih** 'carpet'; **slika** 'picture'; **telefon** 'telephone'; **televizor** 'television set'; **zavjesa** 'curtain'; **tapete** (f. pl.) 'wallpaper'; **polica za knjige** 'book-shelf'
krevet 'bed'; **ormar** 'wardrobe'; **ogledalo** 'mirror'; **ladica** 'drawer'; **madrac** 'mattress'; **jorgan** 'continental quilt'; **posteljina** 'bed linen'; **deka** 'blanket'; **jastuk** 'pillow'

štednjak 'cooker'; **pećnica** 'oven'; **hladnjak (frižider)** 'fridge';
perilica 'washing machine'; **stroj za pranje suđa** 'dishwasher';
lonac 'pot, pan'; **nož** 'knife'; **vilica** 'fork'; **žlica** 'spoon'; **tanjur**
 'plate'; **šalica** 'cup'; **čša** 'glass'

Dialogue 3

Bill has been lent a friend Ante's flat while he is in Zagreb. Ante is showing him round

ANTE: Ovdje se pali svijetlo.

BILL: Gdje se uključuje televizor?

ANTE: Ovdje. Nema grijanja preko ljeta. Ako ti je hladno, imaš grijalicu.

BILL: Gdje se nalazi bojler? Trebam li ga uključiti?

ANTE: Ne, stalno je uključen. Na plin je. Voda je jako topla.

BILL: A štednjak je na struju, je li?

ANTE: Da. A pribor za jelo ti je u ovoj ladici.

paliti (imp.) 'to light, switch on'; **uključiti** (pf.) 'to plug in'; **grijanje** 'heating'; **grijalica** 'heater'; **stalno** 'constantly'; **plin** 'gas'; **struja** 'electricity' (lit. 'current'); **pribor za jelo** 'cutlery'.

Exercise 4

(a) Describe your house/flat.

(b) Complete the following conversation:

MARIJA: Ako ste slobodni, pozivamo vas na večeru.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: U hotelu smo, na recepciji.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Izvoli, ovo je naš stan.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Da, jako smo zadovoljni. Nije velik.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Ne djeca nisu više kod kuće.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Jesu, zamisli! Velika su, zar ne! Izvoli sjesti.

NORA: _____

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (6)

Mark arrives at the hotel. As he is relaxing in his room, Jasna telephones

Mark Dunlop ulazi u svoju sobu. Mala je, ali udobna. Soba mu se dopada: zidovi su obojeni ugodnom svjetlo-plavom bojom, ima lijepih slika Zagreba na zidovima.

Mark se ne želi odmah raspakirati. Uzima pivo iz mini-bara, uključuje televizor i ispruži se na krevet.

Telefon zvoní. Javlja se Jasna. Poziva ga na večeru.

Mark stavlja čašu na stolčić pored kreveta. Ustaje s uzdahom. Otvara torbu i vadi stvari. Gleda tužno svoju odjeću: sve je izgužvano . . .

ulaziti (imp.) 'to enter'; **mu** D of pronoun **on**; **dopadati se** (imp.) (+ D) 'to appeal to'; **obojen** 'painted'; **svjetlo** 'light'; **plav** 'blue'; **boja** 'colour'; **slika** 'picture'; **odmah** 'immediately'; **raspakirati** (**raspakiram**) 'to unpack'; **uzimati** (imp.) 'to take'; **pivo** 'beer'; **uključivati** (imp.) (**uključujem**) 'to turn on'; **televizor** 'the television set'; **ispružiti se** (pf.) 'to stretch out'; **zvoniti** (imp.) 'to ring'; **javljati se** (imp.) 'to call' (or get in touch in any way); **pozivati** (imp.) 'to invite'; **ga** G/A of pronoun **on**; **večera** 'dinner'; **stavljati** (imp.) 'to place'; **čaša** 'glass'; **stolčić** 'little table'; **pored** (+ G) 'beside'; **ustajati** (**ustajem**) 'to get up'; **uzdah** 'sigh'; **otvarati** (imp.) 'to open'; **vaditi** (imp.) 'to take out'; **tužno** 'sadly'; **odjeća** 'clothes'; **sve** 'everything'; **izgužvano** 'crumpled'

7 U restoranu

In the restaurant

In this lesson we will look at:

- ordering meals
- adjectives: genitive case
- adjectives: accusative case
- food and drink

Dialogue 1

Idemo na večeru

We're going out to dinner

Slavko and Marija take Alan and Nora out for a meal in the Old Town

MARIJA: Nama se vrlo sviđa ovaj mali restoran.

SLAVKO: Evo vam jelovnik. Jeste li gladni?

ALAN: Ja jesam!

NORA: I ja! Što nam preporučujete?

MARIJA: Kao predjelo predlažem ili riblju juhu, koja je izvrsna, ili pršut.

ALAN: Ja ću naručiti juhu. Imaju li neke nacionalne specijalitete?

SLAVKO: Kako da ne, ako ste gladni možemo uzeti miješano meso na žaru i razne salate.

NORA: Može. Ja volim zelenu salatu.

SLAVKO: Što više volite, crno ili bijelo vino?

NORA: Uz meso možda crno, ali kako vi želite, meni je svejedno: ja volim i jedno i drugo.

MARIJA: Koliko se sjećam ovdje ima izvrsnih dalmatinskih vina. Zamoli da donesu vinsku kartu, Slavko. Želite li nešto slatko na kraju? Toplo vam preporučujem palačinke s orasima.

SLAVKO: Slažem se, a zatim kavu uz neki ukusan liker.

Vocabulary

bijeli	white	predlagati (imp., to suggest
boca	bottle	predlažem)
ću (future: see Lesson 11)	I shall	preporučivati to recommend
donijeti (pf. donesem)	to bring	(imp. preporučujem)
i jedno i drugo	both	pršut smoked ham, prosciutto
izvrstan (f. izvrsna)	excellent	razan (f. razna) various
jelovnik	menu	salata salad
kako da ne	of course	sjećati se (imp.) to remember (+ G of thing remembered)
kava	coffee	sladak (f. slatka) sweet
koji (f. koja)	which	slagati se (imp., slažem se) to agree
koliko	how much, how many; as far as	svejedno all the same
kraj	end	svidati se (imp.) to appeal to
likier	liqueur	svida nam se we like
meni (D of ja)	to me	topao (f. topla) warm
meso	meat	ukusan tasty
miješan	mixed	(f. ukusna)
može (3rd pers. sg. of moći 'to be able')	all right	uz (+ A) together with, beside
nama	to us	uzeti (pf. uzmem) to take
naručiti (pf.)	to order	vino wine
na žaru	grilled	vinska karta wine list
orah (pl: orasi)	walnut	zamoliti (pf.) to request
palačinka	pancake	zelen green
predjelo	hors d'oeuvre	

Language points

Adjectives: genitive case

Masculine and neuter

There are two forms, definite and indefinite, but the definite form is far more common and therefore the one you should use most. The ending for this is **-og(a)**, or, if the final consonant of the stem is 'soft', **-eg(a)**:

To je sin starog profesora

That is the old professor's son

Ovo je slika ljepšeg krajolika

This is the picture of a more beautiful landscape

Ne volim kraj toga novog filma

I don't like the end of that new film

The optional **-a** is added for stylistic purposes in certain circumstances, for example when the adjective occurs at the end of a sentence:

Ne poznajem starijeg brata, samo mlađega

I don't know the older brother, only the younger one

For a note on the use of the longer forms in the genitive, dative and prepositional cases see Appendix, section 2.

The indefinite ending, for your information, is **-a**:

Vidim visoka mladića

I see a tall young man

Feminine

You will be glad to know that the ending is the same as the genitive of nouns ending in **-a**, namely **-e**:

Restoran je blizu velike pošte

The restaurant is near the big post office

To je muž mlade glumice

That is the husband of the young actress

Prozori ove lijepe prostrane sobe gledaju na park

The windows of this nice spacious room look onto the park

Plural

The genitive plural of all genders is **-ih**:

Terase ovakvih starih restorana su ugodne

The terraces of these old restaurants are pleasant

Svidaju mi se frizure ovih mladih djevojaka

I like these young girls' hairdos

Miris vaših narodnih jela je jako privlačan

The smell of your national dishes is most enticing

Exercise 1*

Put the adjective and noun into the genitive case:

- 1 Tko je direktor (novi hotel)?
- 2 Gdje je ključ (naša soba)?
- 3 Je li to kuća (tvoji roditelji)?
- 4 Preporučujem vam bocu (domaće vino).
- 5 Imas li ključeve (crveni auto)? (**crven** 'red')
- 6 Evo adrese (naši prijatelji).
- 7 Je li ovo mjesto (stara gospođa)?
- 8 Kako je ime (ukusan* liker)?
- 9 Gdje su vrata (spavaća soba)?
- 10 Je li ovo prtljaga (ti novi putnici)?

The partitive genitive

This use of the genitive case of nouns shows that you are referring to a part or portion of a whole; it is often the equivalent of 'some' or 'any' in English.

Imate li kruha?

Have you any bread?

Adjectives agree with the nouns, as always:

Imate li svježeg kruha?

Have you any fresh bread?

Imaju li dobrog crnog vina?

Have they any good red wine?

Imaju li narodnih specijaliteta?

Have they any national specialities?

Exercise 2

Make questions, as in the model, using **ima** and the partitive genitive:

kruh: Ima li kruha?

kava	šećer 'sugar'	čaj 'tea'
mlijeko 'milk'	riba 'fish'	sir 'cheese'

Dialogue 2 (part I)

(You may find it useful to memorise some of these sentences. The English translation is on page 83.)

A tourist is eating alone in a Dubrovnik restaurant

GOST: Molim jelovnik.

KONOBAR: Izvolite.

GOST: Imate li nekih narodnih specijaliteta?

KONOBAR: Svakako, ima raznih ukusnih narodnih jela.

GOST: Možete li preporučiti neko domaće jelo?

KONOBAR: Kao predjelo vam preporučujem pohane gljive ili punjene paprike.

GOST: Imate li juhe?

KONOBAR: Imamo pileću juhu, goveđu juhu, juhu od povrća i jako dobru riblju juhu.

Language points**Adjectives: accusative case****Masculine**

The accusative ending of masculine adjectives varies, as it does with nouns, according to whether the noun referred to is inanimate or animate.

Inanimate: the accusative ending is the same as the nominative.

Animate: the accusative ending is the same as the genitive.

Vidim stari automobil

I see the old car

Vidim starog putnika

I see the old passenger

Neuter

As with nouns, the accusative ending of all neuter adjectives is the same as the nominative.

Vidim malo selo

I see the small village

Feminine

The accusative ending of feminine adjectives is **-u**, the same as for feminine nouns.

Vidim mladu djevojku

I see the young girl

Plural

In all genders, the accusative plural ending is the same as that of the nouns; there is no distinction between animate and inanimate nouns.

Vidim nove automobile

I see the new cars

Vidim visoke mladiće

I see the tall young men

Vidiš li ta mala sela?

Do you see those small villages?

Volite li nove male kuće?

Do you like the new small houses?

Exercise 3*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 You have a very beautiful house.
- 2 The balcony is beside the living room.¹
- 3 The corridor leads into the bedroom.
- 4 We have a very small entrance hall.
- 5 I love these beautiful curtains.²

¹ use **pored** + G; ² **zastor** 'curtain'

- 6 What do you see through the big windows?
 7 Where is the door of the new³ flat?
 8 Be careful,⁴ they have a dangerous⁵ dog!
 9 These houses have beautiful gardens.
 10 Do you see the big balconies of the new flats?

³nov 'new'; ⁴pazite 'be careful'; ⁵opasan 'dangerous')

Dialogue 2 (part II)

- GOST: Želim neko meso. Što imate na jelovniku?
 KONOBAR: Imate teletine – teleće pečenje ili teleći odrezak; svinjetine – svinjsko pečenje ili odrezak; govedine – govedji odrezak ili biftek; ima i piletine – pohane piletine; pa patke i purice s mlincima.
 GOST: Dajte mi kajganu ili možda omlet.
 KONOBAR: Imamo sa šunkom, sirom ili gljivama.
 GOST: A što imate od ribe?
 KONOBAR: Imamo ciple (*A pl.*) skuše (*A pl.*) bakalar (*A sg.*), zubaca (*G sg.*) i srdele (*A pl.*). Imamo i mušule (*A pl.*), jastoga (*G sg.*), lignje (*A pl.*) i škampe (*A pl.*).
 GOST: Ima li svježeg povrća?
 KONOBAR: Dakako. Imamo krumpira, kupusa, graška, mahuna i graha. Ima i kiselog zelja (*all G sg.*).
 GOST: Kakve salate imate?
 KONOBAR: Imamo zelenu salatu, salatu od rajčica, od krastavaca, od cikle ili miješanu salatu.
 GOST: Gdje su ulje i ocat, sol i papar?
 KONOBAR: Tamo, na susjednom stolu. Izvolite.

Exercise 4

Complete the dialogue:

- KONOBAR: Dobar dan. Izvolite?
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Evo vam jelovnik. Želite li neki aperitiv?
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Imamo riblju juhu i govedu juhu.
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Dobro. A kao glavno jelo?
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Imamo svinjsko pečenje i punjene paprike.

- GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Želite li neku salatu?
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Želite li nešto piti?
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: A na kraju nešto slatko?
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Imamo razne torte i voćnu salatu.
 GOST: _____
 KONOBAR: Želite li tursku ili ekspres kavu?
 GOST: _____

Dialogue 2 (part III)

- GOST: Imate li nećeg slatkog?
 KONOBAR: Imamo savijaču od jabuka ili trešanja. Imamo i palačinke sa džemom, čokoladom ili orasima.
 GOST: Ima li sira?
 KONOBAR: Ima ličkog i paškog sira.
 GOST: Što imate od voća?
 KONOBAR: Imamo jabuke, kruške, šljive, marelice, breskve, smokve i grozde.
 GOST: Donesite nam kavu, molim. Jednu bijelu i jednu tursku.
 KONOBAR: Želite li slađu kavu?
 GOST: Ne, gorču. Platiti, molim.
 KONOBAR: Izvolite račun.

Exercise 5

A friend has just arrived in Korčula, where you have already been for a week. You take your friend to dinner in a restaurant. Compose a dialogue discussing the menu.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (7)

Navečer se mladi ljudi nalaze u gradu. Ivanov bratić Mladen je visok mladić sa crnom kosom i plavim očima, lijep, veseo i duhovit. Ostavlja izvanredan dojam na sve djevojke.

Translation of Dialogue 2 (parts I-III)

GUEST: The menu, please.

WAITER: Here you are.

GUEST: Have you any national specialities?

WAITER: Certainly, there are various tasty national dishes.

GUEST: Can you recommend some local dish?

WAITER: I recommend deep fried mushrooms as a starter, or stuffed peppers.

GUEST: Have you any soup?

WAITER: We have chicken, beef, vegetable, and a very good fish soup.

GUEST: I want some meat. What's on the menu?

WAITER: There's veal – roast or cutlet; pork – roast or cutlet; beef – cutlet or steak; there's chicken as well – fried in butter, and duck and turkey.

GUEST: Give me scrambled eggs, or perhaps an omelette.

WAITER: Ham, cheese or mushroom?

GUEST: What fish do you have?

WAITER: We have mullet, mackerel, cod, 'dentex' and sardines. We have also mussels, lobster, squid and scampi.

GUEST: Are there any fresh vegetables?

WAITER: Of course. We have potatoes, carrots, cabbage, peas, French and haricot beans. There's sauerkraut as well.

GUEST: What kind of salads do you have?

WAITER: We have lettuce, tomato, cucumber, beetroot or mixed.

GUEST: Where are the oil and vinegar, salt and pepper?

WAITER: There, on the next table. Here you are.

GUEST: Have you anything sweet?

WAITER: We have apple or cherry strudel. And we have pancakes with jam, chocolate or walnuts.

GUEST: Is there any cheese?

WAITER: There's Lika or Pag cheese.

GUEST: What fruit have you?

WAITER: We have apples, pears, plums, apricots, peaches, figs and grapes.

GUEST: Please bring us coffee. One white and one Turkish.

WAITER: Do you want sweet coffee? (lit. 'sweeter')

GUEST: No, not too sweet (lit. 'more bitter'). I'd like to pay, please.

WAITER: Here is the bill.

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (7)

Jasna takes Mark to her parents' flat for dinner

Jasna vodi Marka u stari dio grada u stan u prizemlju jedne velike, stare kuće. U stan se ulazi kroz lijep vrt, pun cvijeća. Jasna upoznaje Marka sa svojim roditeljima i nudi mu sjesti pored prozora. Jasnin otac pita što Mark želi piti i donosi domaću lozu. Mark se sjeća pive u hotelu i viskija u avionu i pije polako. Zna da treba cijelu čašu popiti odmah, ali osjeća da mora paziti, ne smije se napiti.

voditi (imp.) 'to lead, take'; **stari** 'old'; **dio** 'part'; **stan** 'flat'; **prizemlje** 'ground floor'; **ulazi se** 'one enters'; **vrt** 'garden'; **pun** 'full'; **cvijeće** (n. sg., collective noun) 'flowers'; **roditelj** 'parent'; **nuditi** 'to offer'; **mu D of on**; **sjesti** (pf. **sjednem**) 'to sit down'; **donositi** (imp.) 'to bring'; **polako** 'slowly'; **znati** (imp.) 'to know'; **cijeli** 'whole'; **čaša** 'glass'; **odmah** 'immediately'; **ali** 'but'; **osjećati** (imp.) 'to feel'; **paziti** (imp.) 'to take care'; **smijeti** (imp. **smijem**) 'to dare'; **napiti se** (pf.) 'to get drunk'

8 Na ulici

In the street

In this lesson we will look at:

- street directions
- adjectives: dative and instrumental
- prepositions
- the use of reflexive verbs

Dialogue 1

Idemo u grad

We're going into town

Alan and Nora are walking in Zagreb with their friends. They want to see all the sights

MARIJA: Što sad želite vidjeti? O^oдавde se mo^ožemo lako popeti na Gornji grad, da pogledamo Meštrovićev¹ atelje.

ALAN: Kako se ide gore?

SLAVKO: Ide se ili uspinjačom ili stepenicama. Nadam se da nisu prestrme za Noru.

ALAN: Na kojoj se strani nalazi kolodvor? Više ne znam gdje je jug a gdje je sjever.

SLAVKO: Sada idemo prema zapadu. Ako skrenemo prema centru grada kolodvor je na jugoistoku.

NORA: Katedrala je sad na lijevoj strani a kazalište je negdje desno, zar ne?

MARIJA: Tako je. Vidite li Trg Bana Jelačića?

ALAN: Vidim. Gdje se nalazi naš hotel?

- SLAVKO: Ako stojiš na Jelačićevom trgu i gledaš prema Gradskoj kavani, ideš prvom ulicom s trga desno.
- NORA: A da stigneš u kazalište iz našeg hotela ideš prvom ulicom lijevo, je li?
- SLAVKO: Točno ali je prilično daleko.
- NORA: Meni se čini da je baš blizu. Prema Londonu Zagreb je malen i ugodan za pješake.

¹Meštrović was a famous Croatian sculptor (1883–1962)

Vocabulary

atelj e (m.)	studio	prema (+ P)	towards (prema Londonu :
baš (emph. part.)	really		'compared to London')
činiti se (imp.)	to seem; used impersonally:	prestrm	too steep (strm steep)
	čini mi se 'it seems to me'	prilično	fairly
dalek	far, distant	prvi	first
desno	right	s, sa (+ G)	from
ga (A/G of on)	it	(+ I)	with
gore	up	sjever	north
jug	south	skrenuti (pf., skrenem)	to turn
jugoistok	south-east	stajati (imp. stojim)	to stand
kavana	café	stići (pf. stignem)	to reach, to arrive
kazalište	theatre	šetati (imp.)	to go for a walk
krasan (f. krasna)	fine, beautiful	trg	square
malen	small	ulica	street
nađati se (imp.)	to hope	uspinjača	cable car
nalaziti se (imp.)	to be found	za (+ A)	for
negdje	somewhere	zanimljiv	interesting
odavde	from here	zapad	west
pješak	pedestrian		
po (+ P)	through, along		
popeti	to climb		
(pf. popnem)			

Language points

The dative/prepositional case of adjectives

Masculine

There is an indefinite form of the adjective, which is the same as that of the noun:

Došla je u staru kaputu

She came in an old coat

As with the genitive, however, you will need only to be able to recognise this.

The definite form ends in **-om**:

Govorim ljubaznom konobaru

I am speaking to *the kind* waiter

Sobe u ovom starom hotelu su udobne

The rooms in *this old* hotel are comfortable

Neuter

The ending is the same as that of the masculine:

U ovom malom selu ima lijepa crkva

There is a nice church in *this little* village

Dajem bombone dobrom djetetu

I am giving sweets to *the good* child

Feminine

The ending is **-oj**:

Mladić daje cvijeće ljutitoj djevojci

The young man is giving flowers to *the angry* girl

U ovoj maloj crkvi ima divnih ikona

There are *some wonderful* icons in this little church

NB This ending will be familiar to you from those names of countries which are in fact adjectives: **Engleska – u Engleskoj; Grčka – u Grčkoj**. Remember that all names of countries ending in **-ska** or **-čka** are *adjectives*.

Exercise 1

Make sentences according to the model, using the dative of the adjectives and nouns:

stari profesor: Želim pokazati grad starom profesoru.

ova lijepa djevojka (NB k + i: ci) **mladi putnik iz vlaka**
vaša djeca **ova grupa turista**
stari prijatelj iz Italije

The dative/prepositional plural of adjectives

This is very simple, since the ending is the same for all genders: **-im(a)**. See Appendix, section 2 for the note on usage of the longer form.

Dajemo knjige dobrim studentima

We give books to good students

Nema mjesta u dubrovačkim hotelima

There's no room in the Dubrovnik hotels

U primorskim selima možeš kupiti dobrog vina

You can buy good wine in the coastal villages

Ona tiho čita umornim djevojkama

She is reading quietly to the tired girls

Volim sjediti po malim zagrebačkim kavanama

I like sitting in small Zagreb cafes

You will probably be relieved to know that this ending is also that of the instrumental plural of adjectives, again of all genders!

Exercise 2

Make sentences according to the model, using the dative of the adjectives and nouns:

oni tvoji prijatelji: Moramo napisati pisma onim tvojim prijateljima

to those friends of yours

vaši stari roditelji

svi znanci u Srbiji

mlade sestre

dobri zagrebački prijatelji

vaše majke

Reading passage 1

Zagreb

Read the following text. Identify all the nouns and adjectives and their cases. Be sure that you understand the use of each case before proceeding. Answer the questions on the text. (There's a translation of this passage on pages 94–6.)

U Donjem gradu se čovjek ne može izgubiti. Sve su ulice pravilne. Glavna izgradnja Donjeg grada počela je poslije 1850. Najstarija je kuća na današnjem Trgu Bana Jelačića broj 15,¹ a najmlađa – neboder na početku Ilice. Ilica je jedna od najdužih, možda i najstarijih, a svakako najpopularnijih zagrebačkih ulica. Prvi je trg u Donjem gradu izgrađen po planu Zrinski trg,¹ poznatiji kao Zrinjevac. To je trg platana, penzionerskih klupa, turističkih agencija, spomenika, umjetničkih galerija. Na kraju trga, preko puta glavnog kolodvora, nalazi se najveći zagrebački spomenik – kralj Tomislav na konju. Spomenik na Tomislavovom trgu je najčešći motiv razglednica Zagreba i znak Televizije Zagreb.

donji 'lower'; **izgubiti** 'to get lost'; **pravilan** 'straight'; **glavni** 'main'; **izgradnja** 'building'; **počela je** (past tense) 'began'; **poslije** 'after'; **najstarija** 'the oldest'; **današnji** 'present day'; **broj** 'number'; **najmlađa** 'the youngest'; **neboder** 'skyscraper'; **početak** 'beginning'; **najduži** 'longest'; **izgrađen** 'built'; **po** 'according to'; **poznatiji** 'better-known'; **kao** 'as'; **platana** 'plane tree'; **klupa** 'bench'; **spomenik** 'statue'; **umjetnički** 'art' (adj.); **preko puta** (+ G) 'opposite'; **najveći** 'the biggest'; **kralj** 'king'; **konj** 'horse'; **Tomislavov** 'Tomislav's'; **najčešći** 'most frequent'; **motiv** 'theme'; **razglednica** 'postcard'; **znak** 'sign, mark'

¹ Note the position of the enclitic. Translate: 'The first house . . . is no. 15'; 'The first square built to a plan is'

- 1 Kakve su ulice u Donjem gradu Zagreba?
- 2 Koja je najstarija kuća na Trgu Bana Jelačića?
- 3 Kakva je ulica Ilica?
- 4 Koji je trg u Zagrebu prvi izgrađen po planu?
- 5 Što se nalazi na Zrinjevcu?
- 6 Koji je najveći zagrebački spomenik?
- 7 Gdje se nalazi spomenik kralja Tomislava?
- 8 Gdje se može vidjeti ovaj spomenik?

The instrumental case of adjectives

Masculine and neuter singular: -im

Idem na more s dobrim prijateljem

I'm going to the sea with a *good* friend (male)

Avion leti nad mirnim morem

The plane is flying over a *calm* sea

Feminine singular: -om

Idem na more s dobrom prijateljicom

I'm going to the sea with a *good* friend (female)

Idem sa cijelom obitelji

I'm going with *the whole* family

Plural, all genders: -im

Idem na more sa starim prijateljima

I'm going to the sea with (some) *old* friends

NB See Appendix, section 2 for a complete table of the adjective declensions.

Prepositions followed by the prepositional case

k (or **ka** if followed by the consonant cluster or word beginning with **k**) 'towards, to'

Sutra idemo k prijatelju

Tomorrow we're going to a friend's

prema 'towards', according to'

Vlak ide prema granici

The train is going towards the border

Prema profesorovom objašnjenju, tako je

That's right, according to the teacher's explanation

pri 'by, near'

Nemam knjigu pri ruci

I haven't got the book to hand

o 'about'

Znaš li nešto o novom susjedu?

Do you know anything about the new neighbour?

u¹ 'in'

Ima mnogo lijepih zgrada u Zagrebu

There are many fine buildings in Zagreb

na¹ 'on'

Soba je na drugom katu

The room is on the second floor

¹With these prepositions, as with many others, a clear distinction must be made between their use to express static *location*, when the prepositional (or locative) is used, and the expression of *motion*, when the accusative is used:

Stanujem u Zagrebu	<i>but</i>	Putujem u Zagreb
Kava je na stolu		Stavljam kavu na stol

Prepositions followed by the instrumental case

među 'among'

Crkva se vidi među kućama

The church can be seen among the houses

nad 'above'

Zrakoplov leti nad gradom

The plane is flying above the town

pod 'below'

Grad se vidi pod zrakoplovom

The town can be seen below the plane

za 'behind'

Kuća se nalazi za crkvom

The house is behind the church

pred 'in front of'

Čekam prijatelja pred kućom

I'm waiting for a friend in front of the house

NB All of these prepositions can also take accusative if they are used to convey motion towards a position:

Stavljam kofer pod krevet

I'm placing the suitcase under the bed

za + A: 'for' **Ovo je poklon za Dubravku** This is a gift for Dubravka

Also, in practice, speakers are far more likely to use alternative prepositions, followed by the genitive case: **između**, **iznad**, **ispod**, **iza**, **ispred**. These are the forms you should learn and use yourself.

Exercise 3*

(a) Complete the sentences with the appropriate preposition from this list:

u na iz od prema
o kroz među s ispod

- 1 Hotel nije daleko ____ glavne pošte.
- 2 U tramvaju sjedim svaki dan ____ istim starim gospodinom.
- 3 Ima izvrstan restoran ____ tom lijepom hotelu.
- 4 Vidimo svoje stare prijatelje ____ staklena vrata.
- 5 Mislim da se vaša prtljaga nalazi ____ svim tim torbama.
- 6 Prijatelji pričaju ____ prekrasnom boravku na moru.
- 7 Kad izlazite ____ kavane, dućan je na lijevoj strani.
- 8 Tvoja putovnica se nalazi ____ stolu kod prozora.
- 9 Sada hodamo ____ katedrali, preko Trga Bana Jelačića.
- 10 Ima nekoliko dućana ____ trga pred hotelom Esplanade.

(b) Translate the complete sentences into English.

Dialogue 2

Two acquaintances meet in a Zagreb street

- A: Idete li prema Trgu Bana Jelačića?
 B: Idem. Idem k prijatelju.
 A: Onda idem i ja. Gdje je mala?
 B: Još je u školi, a sutra ide na more.
 A: Blago njoj! Zar ne možete i vi ići?
 B: Za sada ne mogu. Imam posla u novoj bolnici.
 A: Pa da, vi ste arhitekt, zar ne?
 B: Jesam. Znate li vi nešto o toj bolnici?
 A: Ništa. Samo da se nalazi iza stare katedrale.
 B: Tako je. A pred bolnicom ima zgodan parkić.
 A: Krasno. Evo, tu smo na Trgu.
 B: Dođite skoro k meni!
 A: Hvala vam, hoću, jako rado. Do viđenja!

(This dialogue is translated on page 96.)

Language points

Use of reflexive verbs to express general statements

Notice these sentences:

Kako se ide na Gornji grad?

How does one get to the Upper Town?

Ide se ovim stepenicama

One goes up these steps

Many verbs can be made reflexive in this way in order to express a general statement:

Ovdje se ulazi u kazalište

One enters the theatre here

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (8)

The young people have gone to a large park for an evening walk

Mladi ljudi su pošli na Cmrok da prošetaju. Ljetna večer je izvanredno lijepa, mirna i topla. Uskoro će mjesec biti pun.

- Što je lijepo ovdje na mjesečini, kaže Maja, jedna od djevojaka u društvu. Ona hoda sasvim blizu Mladena, i misli kako su mu ramena jaka.
- Da, lijepo je, naročito za mjesečare! Mladen ide dalje i ne gleda je.
- Na kojem si otoku odrastao, Mladene? pita Mira.
- Na Lastovu, ali sam živio i na Korčuli.
- O, što je tamo lijepo! uzdahne Maja.
- Jesi li diplomirao u Splitu?
- Jesam. Nije to loše mjesto za studij!
- Mogu misliti! Blago tebi, smije se Mira.
- A kako ti se ipak sviđa glavni grad Hrvatske? pita Ivan.
- Ono što sam vidio mi se jako sviđa, ali moram reći da ga gledam preko ovih lijepih ženskih glava, a to čini krajolik još ljepšim.

Svaka se djevojka za sebe potajno nasmije, jer svaka misli da se te riječi odnose na nju.

Cmrok 'park on the northern side of Zagreb'; **prošetati** (pf.) 'to walk'; **ljetni** (adj.) 'summer'; **večer** (f.) 'evening'; **miran** 'calm'; **topao** (f. **topla**) 'warm'; **mjesec** 'moon'; **mjesečina** 'moonlight'; **jak** 'strong'; **rame** (G. **ramena**, n. pl. **ramena**) 'shoulder'; **mjesečar** 'sleepwalker'; **odakle** 'where from'; **more** 'sea'; **Dalmatijac** 'Dalmatian'; **uzdahnuti** (**uzdahnem**, pf.) 'to sigh'; **diplomirati** 'to graduate'; **loš** 'bad'; **studij** 'studies'; **blago tebi** 'lucky you!'; **smijati se** (imp.) 'to laugh'; **svidati se** (imp. + D) 'to appeal to' (cf. **dopadati se**); **ipak** 'none the less'; **preko** (+ G) 'over, across'; **glava** 'head'; **činiti** 'to make'; **krajoblik** 'landscape'; **potajno** 'secretly'; **nasmijati se** (pf.) 'to smile'; **odnositi se** (na + A) 'to refer to'

Exercise 4*

(a) Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian, using the prepositions from the list on the right:

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1 Are you going <i>to</i> (your) brother's? | (k) |
| 2 The shop is <i>behind</i> the post office. | (za) |
| 3 There's a nice little park <i>in front of</i> the hotel. | (pred) |
| 4 I'm taking a friend <i>to</i> the Upper Town. | (na) |
| 5 There's a beautiful church <i>in</i> that village. | (u) |
| 6 They are going <i>towards</i> the station by this road. | (prema) |
| 7 Does he know anything <i>about</i> the Upper Town? | (o) |
| 8 You can see the Cathedral <i>above</i> those roofs. | (nad) |
| 9 <i>Among</i> the houses there are some very old (ones). | (među) |
| 10 We are looking at the red roofs of the town
<i>beneath</i> the hill. | (pod) |

voditi 'to lead'; **crkva** 'church'; **krov** (pl. **krovovi**) 'roof'; **brijeg** 'hill'

(b) Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 Šetaju li se Alan i Nora sami?
- 2 Što žele vidjeti?
- 3 Sviđa li se Nori Zagreb?
- 4 Gdje se nalazi Meštrovićev atelje?
- 5 Kako se ide na Gornji grad?
- 6 Što Alan želi znati?
- 7 Gdje se nalazi kolodvor?
- 8 Vidi li se hotel Palace?
- 9 Kako se ide do hotela s Trga Bana Jelačića?
- 10 Čini li se Nori da je Zagreb veliki grad?

Translation of Reading passage 1: Zagreb

A person cannot get lost in the Lower Town. All the streets are straight. The main construction of the Lower Town began after 1850. The oldest house on present-day Ban Jelačić



Square is no. 15, and the 'youngest' the skyscraper at the beginning of Ilica street. Ilica is one of the longest, perhaps even the oldest, and certainly one of the most popular streets in Zagreb. The first square in the Lower Town to be built to a plan is Zrinski Square, better known as Zrinjevac. This is a square of plane trees, pensioners' benches, tourist agencies, monuments, art galleries. At the end of the square, opposite the main railway station, is the largest statue in Zagreb – King Tomislav on a horse. The statue on Tomislav's Square is the most frequent subject of postcards of Zagreb, and the symbol of Zagreb television.

Translation of Dialogue 2

- A: Are you going towards Ban Jelačić Square?
 B: Yes, I'm going to a friend's.
 A: Then I'll come too. Where's the little one (your daughter)?
 B: She's still at school, and tomorrow she's going to the sea.
 A: Lucky girl! Can't you go too?
 B: Not for the moment. I'm busy in the new hospital.
 A: Oh, yes, you're the architect, aren't you?
 B: Yes. Do you know anything about that hospital?
 A: Nothing. Only that it's behind the old cathedral.
 B: That's right. And there's a nice little park in front of it.
 A: Lovely! Here, we've arrived at the square. Come to see me soon!
 B: Thank you, I will, with great pleasure. 'Bye!

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (8)

Mark is going with Jasna to her office. After breakfast, she calls for him at the hotel

Slijedećeg dana, Mark se rano budi. Treba se spremi za posjet Jasninom uredu. Mora ispeglati čistu bijelu košulju i izabrati zgodnu kravatu. Silazi u restoran i naručuje bijelu kavu. Uskoro dolazi Jasna po njega. Vozi stari mali auto, jako praktičan za grad. Ceste su pune prometa: ponedjeljak je i svi se žure na posao. Ured se nalazi u novom dijelu grada, s

druge strane rijeke Save preko velikog mosta.

sljedeći 'next, following' (*NB* the expression **sljedećeg dana** is in the genitive case, denoting a time when an action took place); **rano** 'early'; **buditi** (imp.) 'to wake'; **spremiti se** (pf.) 'to get ready'; **posjet** 'visit'; **ured** 'office'; **ispeglati** (pf.) 'to iron' (imp.: **peglati**); **čist** 'clean'; **bijeli** 'white'; **košulja** 'shirt'; **izabrati** (pf. **izaberem**) 'to choose'; **kravata** 'tie'; **silaziti** (imp.) 'to go down'; **naručivati** (imp.) 'to order'; **cesta** 'street'; **promet** 'traffic'; **ponedjeljak** 'Monday'; **žuriti se** (imp.) 'to hurry'; **s druge strane** 'on the other side'; **rijeka** 'river'; **most** 'bridge'.

9 Posjet prijateljima

Visit to friends

In this lesson we will look at:

- the past tense
- word order
- past tense questions
- negative past tense
- the emphatic use of pronouns

Dialogue 1

Idemo u posjet

We're going visiting

Alan and Nora go to visit acquaintances of Alan's

Alan i Nora su pošli tramvajem u posjet Alanovim poznanicima: upoznao je Tomu u Londonu. Stigli su na vrijeme i našli kuću bez teškoća.

ANA: Stigli ste! Dobro došli!

ALAN: Da ti predstavim moju suprugu, Noru.

ANA: Drago mi je. Nora, ovo je moj muž Tomo.

TOMO: Dobro došli! Kad ste stigli u Zagreb?

ALAN: Stigli smo prekjucher. Jako nam se sviđa Zagreb.

TOMO: Jeste li uspjeli već nešto vidjeti?

NORA: Jesmo. Već smo puno toga vidjeli. Jučer i danas smo cijeli dan hodali.

ANA: Zar niste bili umorni poslije puta?

ALAN: Malo, ali lijepo smo se odmorili u udobnom hotelu.

ANA: Izvolite sjesti.

- TOMO:** Želite li nešto popiti prije večere? Imamo izvrsnu domaću lozovaču. Dobili smo je sa sela.
- ALAN:** Jako rado što se mene tiče.
- NORA:** Ja ne pijem žestoka pića, hvala. Imate li možda čašu vina?
- TOMO:** Naravno, imamo jako dobro bijelo vino. Stavio sam ga još jutros u frižider.
- ANA:** Meni daj lozovaču, molim te.

Vocabulary

č <u>a</u> ša	glass	prije (+ G)	before
cjeli	whole	puno, puno toga	a lot, a great deal
danas	today	put	journey
dobiti (pf. dobijem)	to acquire	rakija	brandy
frižider	refrigerator	s vremena na	from time to
hodati (imp.)	to walk	vrijeme	time
jučer	yesterday	staviti (pf.)	to place, put
jutros	this morning	što se mene tiče	as far as I'm
lozovača	grape brandy		concerned
odmoriti se (pf.)	to rest	teškoća	difficulty
meni (D of ja)	to me	tramvaj	tram
naravno	of course	ući (pf., uđem)	to enter
na vrijeme	on time	umoran	tired
poći (pf. pođem)	to set off	(f. umorna)	
poslije (+ G)	after	uspjeti (pf.	to succeed
posjet	visit	uspijem)	
poznaničnik	acquaintance	već	already
pravi	proper, right	žestok	strong, fierce
predstaviti (pf.)	to present, to introduce	žestoka pića	spirits
prekjučer	the day before yesterday		

Language points 1

Formation of the past (perfect) tense

You will be glad to know that you yourself need to be able to use only three tenses: simple present, perfect and future. There are one or two others you need to be able to recognise, but for all practical

purposes these three are sufficient. The perfect tense is very easily formed. It is a compound tense, consisting of the present tense of the auxiliary **biti** and the active past participle.

The active past participle

(a) Verbs with infinitive ending in **-ti**. The majority of Serbian and Croatian verbs is in this category. Take the infinitive e.g. – **spavati** – remove final **-ti** and add the following endings:

-o (m. sg.)	-la (f. sg.)	-lo (nt. sg.)
-li (m. pl.)	-le (f. pl.)	-la (nt. pl.)

spavao, spavala, spavalo; spavali, spavale, spavala

Past tense

ja sam spavao / ja sam spavala	mi smo spavali
ti si spavao / ti si spavala	vi ste spavali
on je spavao	dječaci su spavali
ona je spavala	djevojke su spavale
dijete je spavalo	sela su spavala

Regular verbs with infinitive in -ti

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Infinitive stem</i>	<i>Active past participle</i>		
imati	ima-	imao (m.)	imala (f.)	imalo (n.)
piti	pi-	pio	pila	pilo
putovati	putova-	putovao	putovala	putovalo
raditi	radi-	radio	radila	radilo
odmoriti	odmori-	odmorio	odmorila	odmorilo
hodati	hoda-	hodao	hodala	hodalo

(b) *NB* In Croatian, verbs with infinitive in **-jeti** have **-io** as *masculine singular* participle. This is because if the final **-ti** is removed **-je + o** sounds virtually the same as **-io** and this is consequently how it is written:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Infinitive stem</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>
vidjeti	vidje-	vidio	vidjela	vidjelo
uspjeti	uspje-	uspio	uspjela	uspjelo
htjeti	htje-	htio	htjela	htjelo
željeti	želje-	želio	željela	željelo
voljeti	volje-	volio	voljela	voljelo

(c) Verbs with infinitive ending in **-ći** or **-sti** form the active past participle slightly differently. For the time being, it is simplest to learn the participle of each new verb of this kind as you come to it. You will soon find that you are able to predict most of them.

Infinitive ending in **-sti**: s is dropped

	<i>M</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>N</i>
jesti	jeo	jela	jelo
pasti	pao	pala	palo
sjesti	sjeo	sjela	sjelo
	sio		

Infinitive ending in **-ći**:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Infinitive stem</i>	<i>Active past participle</i>		
stići	stig-	stigao	stigla	stiglo
moći	mog-	mogao	mogla	moglo
reći	rek-	rekao	rekla	reklo

All the compounds of **ići** form the participle in the same way:

ići	išao, išla, išlo, išli
doći	došao, došla, došlo, došli
ući	ušao, ušla, ušlo, ušli

(d) The active past participle of **biti** is quite regular:

Ja sam bio	Dijete je bilo
Ona je bila	Mi smo bili

Word order 1

NB Because the short forms of **biti** are, as you know, *enclitics*, they must be placed immediately after the *first* stressed word in the sentence. Thus, if the pronoun or other subject is used: **Ja sam došla, Mladić je stigao**. However, if the pronoun is not used, the enclitic is placed *after* the participle: **Došli smo, Vidjela si**

Exercise 1

Supply the perfect tense of the verbs in the following sentences:

- (imati) Mladić _____ lijep šesir.
- (vidjeti) Djevojka _____ prekrasnu haljinu u dućanu.¹
- (umoriti) Putovanje nas _____
- (jesti) Putnici _____ u ugodnom novom restoranu.

¹ **dućan** 'shop'

- 5 (piti) Naš domaćin² _____ domaću šljivovicu.
 6 (stići) Gosti _____ na vrijeme.
 7 (ući) Marija i Jasna _____ u kuću.
 8 (željeti) Alan _____ mnogo vidjeti tijekom³ boravka.
 9 (spavati) Svi _____ jako dobro u udobnom hotelu.
 10 (moći) Drago mi je što _____ Luka _____ doći.⁴

² **domaćin** 'host'; ³ **tijekom** + G 'during'; ⁴ Think about word order here

Word order 2

The consequence of the rule in Lesson 2 above – that enclitics must be placed immediately after the first stressed word (or phrase) in a sentence or clause – is that in a complex sentence, the auxiliary can sometimes be quite far removed from the participle:

Putnik je često tijekom putovanja izlazio da popuši cigaretu

The passenger *went out* often in the course of his journey to smoke a cigarette

Kažem da sam se poslije prvih lijepih dana u Zagrebu

osjećala kao da oduvijek živim ovdje

I say that after the first lovely days in Zagreb *I felt* as though I had always lived here

Jako mi je drago što je tvoj sin, koga nisam jos upoznala,

konačno uspio doći ovamo

I'm very glad that your son, whom I have not yet met, *has* at last *succeeded* in coming here

Past tense questions

Remember that there are two basic ways of introducing a question:

(a) Verb + **li**

Imate li kartu?

Have you got a ticket?

Remember that when the verb is **biti**, the long form must be used:

Jesi li umorna?

Are you tired?

In exactly the same way, in questions formed on this model with the past tense the long form of the auxiliary must be used:

Jesi li bila umorna?

Were you tired?

Jeste li spavali?

Did you sleep?

(b) **Da li** + verb (not common in Croatian)

Da li imate kartu?

The short form of the auxiliary is placed after **da li**:

Da li ste spavali?

Jesam li (ja) zvaao?

Je li (ona) zvala?

Jeste li (vi) zvali?

Da li sam (ja) uspio?

Da li je (ona) uspjela?

Da li ste (vi) uspjeli?

Exercise 2*

Translate these sentences and then make questions, as in the example:

She has reserved a seat in the train.

Rezervirala je mjesto u vlaku.

Je li rezervirala mjesto u vlaku?

- 1 You arrived at the border yesterday.
- 2 He reserved a double room in the hotel.
- 3 They saw the cathedral and the theatre.
- 4 She has gone to visit friends.
- 5 They have seen many interesting things in the town.
- 6 We met your friends in Dubrovnik.
- 7 You drank local brandy at (your) friends' house.
- 8 He put the white wine in the fridge this morning.
- 9 They had a good rest in the comfortable hotel.
- 10 You have been walking the whole day.

Negative of past tense

This is very straightforward: use the negative form of the auxiliary (**nisam**, etc.) + active past participle. As the negative forms of **biti** are not enclitics, the rules about word order do not apply. The negative auxiliary normally precedes the participle:

Nisam zvaao.

I did not call

Zar niste išli?

Didn't you go?

Rekao je da nije uspio

He said he didn't succeed

Emphatic use of personal pronouns

Note the use of the long form of the personal pronoun where it is emphasised (personal pronouns are treated in Lesson 10).

Meni daj tu lozovaču

Give the brandy *to me*

I meni, molim te

And *to me*, please

Dialogue 2

Two friends are talking over a drink

A: Nisam gledao novi američki film, a ti?

B: Nisam ni ja. Jeste li ti i Vesna bile u novoj kavani pored Save?

A: Ne, nismo. Nismo nigdje bili. Jesu li djeca došla k vama?

B: Nisu. Nisu željela biti u gradu.

Exercise 3*

Translate Dialogue 2 into English.

Language points

Present tense to express English present perfect

Note the use of the present tense:

U Zagrebu sam već tri tjedna

I have been in Zagreb for three weeks already

Koliko dugo uči jezik?

How long has he been studying the language?

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (9)

A few days later, Ivan and Mira are discussing Mladen

- Je li, Miro, kaže Ivan nekoliko dana kasnije, Mladen se lijepo uklapa u naše društvo od prvog dana, zar ne?
- Izvanredno, zbilja. On je izuzetan mladić u svakom pogledu. Ivan je ozbiljno pogleda.
- Pa sad, ne treba pretjerivati. Ali, veselo je s njim.
- Koliko dugo će još ostati u Zagrebu?
- Ne znam točno. Rekao je da će doći na desetak dana, a već je prošao cijeli tjedan.
- Što ćemo večeras?
- Znaš da utorkom uvijek igram košarku. Imamo utakmicu večeras, Mladen će vjerojatno doći sa mnom.
- Ako nema nekih svojih planova. . . . Imam dojam da mu se Vesna dopada.
- Ozbiljno misliš? Nisam primijetio. Pa, zgodna je cura. – Ivanu je očigledno lakše.
- Hajde, vrijeme je da pođem. Čekaju me za ručak. Nadam se da će tvoja ekipa večeras pobijediti. Vidimo se sutra.
- Zdravo, Miro!

uklapati se (imp.) 'to fit in'; **zbilja** 'really'; **izuzetan** 'exceptional'; **pogled** 'look, point of view'; **ozbiljan** 'serious'; **pogledati** (pf.) 'glance'; **pretjerivati** (imp.) 'to exaggerate'; **točno** 'exactly'; **desetak** 'about 10'; **proći** 'pass'; **košarka** 'basketball'; **utakmica** 'match'; **vjerojatno** 'probably'; **cura** (coll.) 'girl', 'bird'; **lakše** comp. of **lako**, 'easier'; **ručak** 'lunch'; **ekipa** 'team'; **pobijediti** (pf.) 'to win'

Exercise 4

(a) Answer these questions with a negative sentence and add a positive statement, as in the example:

Jeste li pili domaću lozovaču? Nisam pio domaću lozovaču,
pio sam vino.

- 1 Jesu li vidjeli mnogo zanimljivoga?
- 2 Jeste li jeli meso u restoranu?
- 3 Je li putovala vlakom?
- 4 Jesmo li već bili u ovoj crkvi?
- 5 Jeste li uspjeli naći poštu?
- 6 Je li rezervirao stol u restoranu?
- 7 Je li pila bijelo vino?

- 8 Jesu li bili na Gornjem gradu?
- 9 Jeste li posjetili muzeje na Zrinjevcu?
- 10 Jesi li se javila prijateljima?

(b) Pitanja (questions)

- 1 Tko je došao iz Engleske?
- 2 Kako su stigli do poznanika?
- 3 Kad su Alan i Nora stigli u Zagreb?
- 4 Sviđa li im¹ se Zagreb?
- 5 Jesu li uspjeli nešto vidjeti?
- 6 Što su radili jučer i danas?
- 7 Što ste vi jučer radili?
- 8 Jeste li hodali ili ste se vozili autom?
- 9 Jeste li uvijek umorni poslije puta?
- 10 Gdje su se Alan i Nora odmorili?
- 11 Što vi pijete prije večere?
- 12 Volite li čitati prije nego zaspate?²
- 13 Pijete li žestoka pića?
- 14 Kakvo vino imaju Jasna i Tomo?
- 15 Volite li više crno ili bijelo vino?
- 16 Što volite raditi na odmoru?³
- 17 Volite li stare crkve i katedrale?
- 18 Da li više volite grad ili plažu za odmor?
- 19 Volite li jesti strana jela na odmoru?
- 20 Kako se ide od vaše kuće do dućana? – do pošte? – do kazališta?

¹im D of oni 'to them'; ²zaspati (perf. of **zaspim**) 'to fall asleep'; ³odmor 'holiday, rest'

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (9)

Mark Dunlop has begun to keep a diary to record his trip to Croatia

Mark Dunlop je počeo voditi dnevnik: počinje radni dio njegovog boravka u Hrvatskoj. Odlučio je voditi dnevnik na hrvatskom da u isto vrijeme vježba jezik:

Danas sam bio prvi put u glavnom uredu. Bio sam uzbuđen jer nisam znao što me čeka, na primjer: da li svi znaju engleski ili moram odmah sve govoriti na hrvatskom. Srećom je sve dobro prošlo: govorio sam dovoljno dobro i sve sam

razumio što su oni govorili. Kad je bio govor o nečem složenom, Jasna je prevodila. Bilo je ugodno. Svi su bili ljubazni.

početi (pf. **počnem**; imp. **počinjati, počinjem**) 'to begin'; **voditi** (imp.) 'to lead' (here: 'to keep'); **dnevnik** 'diary'; **vježbati** (imp.) 'to practise'; **uzbuđen** 'excited'; **na primjer** 'for example'; **srećom** 'luckily'; **dovoljno** 'sufficiently'; **složen** 'complex'; **prevoditi** (imp.), **prevesti** (pf.) 'to translate'

10 Obiteljski odnosi

Family relationships

In this lesson we will look at:

- personal pronoun declensions
- family relationships
- word order (3)
- usage of pronouns

Dialogue 1

Razgovaramo o rodbini

We talk about our relatives

The Camerons are discussing their families with Tomo and Ana

ANA: Nora, znaš li da su Marija i Tomo rođaci?

NORA: Nisam znala, kako to?

TOMO: Ana se šali, nismo rod nego mi se brat oženio Marijinom sestrom.

NORA: Zbilja? Baš je svijet malen!

ANA: Nisi to dobro objasnio, jer mu on nije rođeni brat.

ALAN: Znači da mu je bratić?

ANA: Nije, nego polubrat. Iz očevog prvog braka; razveo se od prve žene još kao mlad čovjek.

NORA: Kako se slažeš s njim?

TOMO: Jako dobro, kao da mi je pravi brat. Samo što sada živi i radi u Africi pa ga rijetko viđam.

ANA: Imate li vas dvojice braće ili sestara?

ALAN: Pa ja sam u sličnom položaju kao Tomo. Imam polusestru,

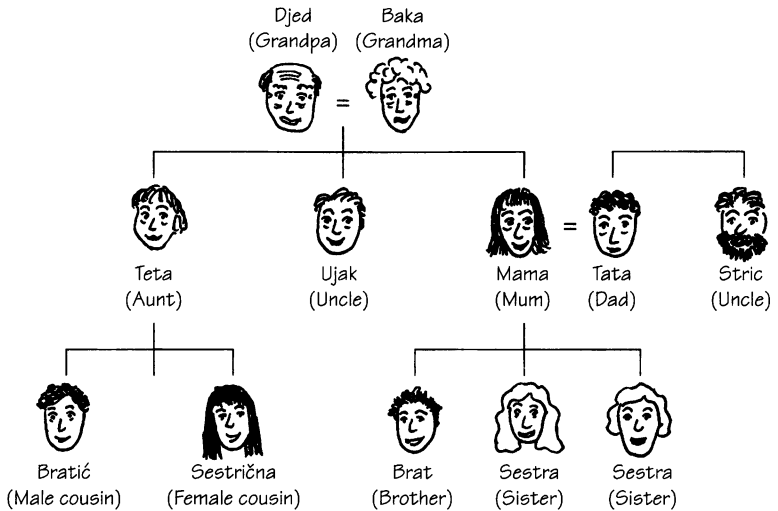
ali kad sam ja bio dijete ona je već bila odrasla, tada je nisam dobro poznavao.

NORA: Ali dok je Alan studirao, stanovao je kod nje pa ju je često viđao. U to vrijeme bila je već udata i imala svoju djecu.

ALAN: Zamislite, imam nećaka koji je rođen prije mene. Mladi sam od njega iako sam mu stric!

Vocabulary

braća (f., collective)	plural of brat	poznavati (imp.)	to know (used particularly of knowing people)
brak	marriage		
brat	brother		
bratić	cousin (m.) (f. sestrična)	razvesti se (pf. razvedem)	to divorce
dvoje	two (mixed genders)	rijetko	rarely
još	still	rod	kin
majka	mother	rođak	relation
Marijin	Marija's	rođen	born; 'by blood'
nećak	nephew	šaliti se (imp.)	to joke
nećakinja	niece	sestra	sister
obitelj (f.)	family	slagati se (imp., slažem se)	to agree; to get on
objasniti (pf.)	to explain	stric	uncle (father's brother)
očev (possessive adj. from otac)	father's	uđata	married (of woman)
odnos	relationship	vidati (imp.)	to see (repeatedly)
odrastao (f. odrasla)	grown up	zbilja	really
otac (G oca)	father	značiti (imp.)	to mean
oženiti se (+ instr.)	to marry (of man)	živjeti (imp. živim)	to live
položaj	position		
polubrat	half-brother		



Language points

Declension of personal pronouns

The first thing to remember is that personal pronouns are not used in the nominative except for emphasis. Compare:

Zašto si došao?

Why have you come?

Došao sam vidjeti majku

I've come to see my mother

and

Tko je? Jesi li ti, dušo? (vocative of **duša** 'soul')

Who is it? Is it *you*, dear?

Ja sam, majko

It is *I*, mother

The other cases of the pronouns are used as required by the sentence structure: they behave like any other kind of noun.

The second main point is that there are two forms of some of the cases (genitive/accusative and dative) – a neutral short form and an emphatic long form. Like the short forms of **biti**, the short forms of pronouns are enclitic, i.e. they cannot carry stress and cannot therefore be placed in a position where they would be stressed. Compare:

Zasto si došao?

Why have you come?

Došao sam da te vidim (short form)

I've come to see *you*

Jesi li došao da vidiš Anu?

Have you come to see Anne?

Nisam, nego da vidim tebe (long form)

No, I've come to see *you*

Remember that the long forms must be used when pronouns follow a preposition:

Sjedi pokraj mene i pričaj mi o njemu

Sit *beside me* and tell me *about him*

Declension of ja I

Genitive/Accusative (genitive and accusative of all personal pronouns are the same and can therefore be taken together.)

	<i>Short form: me</i>	<i>Long form: mene</i>
(G)	On me se ne sjeća	Daleko je on od mene
	He doesn't remember me	He is far from me
(A)	Vidjela me je	Je li to poklon za mene?
	She saw me	Is that a present for me?

Dative

	<i>short: mi</i>	<i>long: meni</i>
	Rekao mi je istinu	Meni nije ništa rekao
	He told <i>me</i> the truth	He didn't tell <i>me</i> anything

The *prepositional* case has the same form, but since it is used only with prepositions, it is always long.

Došli su k meni jučer

They came to see me yesterday

Što su govorili o meni?

What did they say about me?

Instrumental: mnom (or *mnome* if the sentence requires an additional syllable; see Appendix, section 2)

Dođi sa mnom, ako želiš

Come with me, if you want

Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the correct form of **ja**

- 1 Je li to poklon za ___?
- 2 Dolaziš li u kino sa ___?
- 3 Dajte ___ bijelu kavu, molim vas.
- 4 Nemojte pričati o ___!
- 5 Sjedi blizu ___, molim te.

Ti (you); reflexive pronoun: se, sebe

These follow the same pattern:

G On te se dobro sjeća **To sam dobila od tebe**
He remembers you well I got that from you

D Što sam ti rekao? **Tebi dajem ovu knjigu**
What did I tell you? I'm giving you this book

P O tebi su govorili samo dobro
They said only good things about you

I Želim biti s tobom
I want to be with you

The reflexive pronoun (**se**) has no nominative form. In reflexive verbs it is used to denote the 'object' of the action. It can only refer to the subject of a verb, and cannot itself be the subject. In all reflexive verbs it is the genitive/accusative form which is used:

Ja sam se počesljala
I combed my hair

Ti si se lijepo obukla
You've dressed nicely

On se kupa. Ona se sprema

He is bathing. She is getting ready

Mi smo se upoznali

We have met

Vi se niste odavno vidjeli

You haven't seen each other for a long time

Oni se jako dobro poznaju

They know each other very well

The long form of the genitive/accusative is used for all persons
– for emphasis or after a preposition:

Čuvaj sebe, ne brini o nama

Look after *yourself*, don't worry about us

Otkad znam za sebe, volim more

As long as I can remember I've loved the sea
(lit. Since I have known *of myself* . . .)

Nisu kupili poklone za sebe

They didn't buy gifts for themselves

D sebi

Govorio je sam sebi . . .

He was saying to himself . . .

P sebi

Ona govori stalno o sebi

She's always talking about herself

I sobom

Donijeli su prtljagu sa sobom

They brought their luggage with them

Dialogue 2

Two friends meet. One is driving a new car

A: Je li ti to novi auto?

B: Je. Kako ti se sviđa?

A: Jako! Hoćeš li me voziti nekamo?

B: Rado! Odmah dolazim po tebe. Idem samo po benzin!

A: *Is that a new car?*

B: *Yes. How do you like it?*

A: *A lot! Will you drive me somewhere?*

B: *Gladly! I'll come for you right away. I'm just going for petrol.*

Language points

Declension on, ona, ono (he, she, it)

On/ono

Accusative and genitive are the same.

Short: ga

Long: njega

Odavno ga nisam vidjela Što će biti od njega?

I haven't seen him for a long time What will become of him?

Evo ti pisma, ja sam ga već pročitala

Here's the letter, I've already read it

D **mu**

njemu

Dala sam mu knjigu

Nisi to valjda rekao njemu?

I gave him the book

You presumably didn't tell *him*?

P **Čuli smo mnogo o njemu**

We've heard a lot about him

I **njim (njime)**

Ona ide s njim u kazalište

She's going to the theatre with him

Poklanjam ti ovo naliv-pero, njime sam napisao ove pjesme

I give you this fountain pen, I wrote these poems with it

Ona

G *Short: je*

Long: nje

Rado smo je se sjećali

Otišao je daleko od nje

We remembered her with pleasure

He went far away from her

The accusative short form is the same as genitive, but *Long: nju*

Vidjeli smo je tamo

We saw her there

Vidjeli smo tebe, a nju nismo vidjeli

We saw you, but we didn't see her

but if the accusative of **ona (je)** occurs in the same sentence as the short form of the third person singular of **biti**, an alternative form of accusative of **ona** may be used: **ju**.

Je li vidio Anu? Vidio ju je
Did he see Anne? He saw her

D joj, njoj
Dajem joj knjigu
I'm giving her the book

I njom (njome)
Vidamo se često s njom
We often see her

Plurals

Declension of **mi** (we) and **vi** (you): these declensions are similar:

A/G	nas		vas	
D	nam	(nama)	vam	(vama)
P	nama		vama	
I	nama		vama	

Oni, one, ona (they)

A/G	ih	njih	(long form)
D	im	njim	(long form)
P	njima		
I	njima		

Exercise 2*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 Did he see me?¹
- 2 She showed me the book.²
- 3 They are going with me.
- 4 You are coming to me this evening.³
- 5 He was at my place yesterday.⁴
- 6 Did they visit you?⁵
- 7 I gave you the book.
- 8 They were sitting behind you.

¹order: aux., pronoun, participle; ²participle, pronoun, aux., obj., ³večeras; ⁴jučer;
⁵aux., pronoun, participle

- 9 He was walking towards you.
 10 That is very nice of you.
 11 He bought that book for himself.
 12 We are carrying a lot of things with us.
 13 She should buy something for herself.⁶
 14 You must think about yourself more.⁷
 15 I can only speak for myself.

⁶ use dative; ⁷ *više*

Word order with pronouns 3

Pronouns must be placed in a strict order:

Dative precedes accusative/genitive:

Ovo je poklon, dajem ti ga

This is a gift; I'm giving *it to you*

Where short forms of pronouns occur in the same sentence as short forms of verbs (**biti** and two other auxiliaries we have yet to meet), the verbal forms precede the pronouns:

Dao sam ti ga

I gave *it to you*

Reflexive pronoun **se** follows these:

Rado *smo je se* sjećali

There is one exception: the third person singular of **biti – je** – is placed after all the other enclitics:

Da li ih se je sjetio? Did *he* remember *them*?

This is the formula you should learn: **li** (interrog. part.); **ve** (verbal); **D, A/G** (of pronouns); **se; je**.

It seems a great deal to remember all at once, but it will gradually become instinctive. For the time being, try to observe all clusters of enclitics as you come to them, write some typical ones down for reference and remember the formula when you need to compose a sentence yourself.

Exercise 3*

(a) Substitute pronouns for the nouns in italics. You may need to alter the word order

- 1 Jesi li bio kod *Dragana*?

- 2 Sinoć¹ smo vidjeli *Mariju*.
- 3 Jeste li gledali *film*?
- 4 *Andrea* se igrala² s *Jasnom*.³
- 5 Dao je knjigu *gospodinu Petriću*.
- 6 Bili su kod *tete*⁴ na ručku.⁵
- 7 Putovali smo s *roditeljima*.⁶
- 8 On je lijepo govorio o *majci*.
- 9 Jeste li otpratili⁷ *djecu* na kolodvor?
- 10 Pokazala⁸ je *kuću* prijateljima.

¹ *sinoć* 'last night'; ² *igrati se* 'to play'; ³ Notice that with the third person singular *only* of a reflexive verb in the past tense it is possible to omit the auxiliary: **On se vratio s mora** (**On se je vratio s mora**); **teta** 'aunt'; ⁴ **ručak** 'lunch'; ⁵ **roditelj** 'parent'; ⁶ **otpratiti** 'accompany'; ⁷ **pokazati** 'to show'

(b) Supply questions for the following answers, using pronouns:

- 1 Da, upoznala sam ga jučer.
- 2 Ne, još je nisam vidio.
- 3 Volim je, ali joj ne vjerujem.
- 4 Da, često idem s njima u kino.
- 5 Ne, odavno se nismo vidjeli.
- 6 Ne, nisam se još upoznao s njima.
- 7 Da, rekao sam mu to.
- 8 Da, bili smo kod vas prošlog ljeta.
- 9 Ne, dobila sam knjigu od tebe.
- 10 Da, dala sam joj adresu.

(c) Translate into Croatian or Serbian:

John is my relation. My brother married Anne's sister. Is he your cousin? My sister is divorced. Do they get on well? Have you any brothers or sisters? She was married very young. We have a nephew. My mother has a half-brother.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (10)

Mira persuades Vesna to invite Mladen over for the evening

Mira je kod Vesne poslije podne.

- Molim te, Vesna, ako si mi prijatelj pozovi Mladena večeras da s nama posjedi ili izađe.
- Kako mu mogu ja tako nešto predložiti?

- Lako. Valjda vidiš da ja ne mogu. Zbog Ivana, mislim. Vesna je pažljivo pogleda.
- Jako ti se sviđa Mladen, je li?
- Ne znam, Vesna. Zbunjena sam i zabrinuta. Ne znam što se sa mnom dešava. Čas mislim da Ivana iskreno volim, a čim pogledam Mladena počinje mi se vrtjeti u glavi.
- Nisi ti jedina, izgleda!
- Možda. Nije važno. Hoćeš li se javiti? Molim te! Ispeći ćemo kolač pa mu reci da treba doći vidjeti kakve smo mi domaćice!
- U redu, Miro, smiri se. Javit ću se. Samo nisam ja kriva ako sebi kompliciraš život!
- Nisi, dabome, hvala ti, Vesna, ti si pravi drug!

posjediti (pf.) 'to sit for a while'; **takav** 'of that kind'; **zbog** (+ G) 'because of'; **pažljiv** 'careful'; **zbunjen** 'confused'; **zabrinut** 'worried'; **dešavati se** (imp.) 'to happen'; **čas** 'one moment'; **iskren** 'sincere'; **čim** 'as soon as'; **počinjati** (imp., počinjem) 'to begin'; **vrtjeti se (nekome) u glavi** (imp.) 'to feel dizzy'; **jedini** 'the only one'; **izgledati** (imp.) 'to seem'; **nije važno** 'it doesn't matter'; **ispeći** (pf.) 'to bake'; **kolač** 'cake'; **domaćica** 'housewife'; **smiriti se** (pf.) 'to calm oneself'; **kriv** 'to blame, guilty'; **komplicirati** (imp.) 'to complicate'; **život** 'life'; **dabome** 'of course'

Language in action

Examples of pronouns and other short forms in context

Izgubila sam knjigu. Da li si je vidjela?
 Ne, nisam je vidjela. Možda ju je Ivo vidio.
 Imaš pravo, dala sam mu je jučer.
 Potraži je dakle kod njega.

Poznaješ li Mirinog brata?
 Da, upoznali smo se ljetos.
 Sjećam se, vratili ste se skupa s odmora.
 Jesi li ga pitala da li me se sjeća?

Tko im je to rekao?
 Ne znam, ja to nisam rekao njima, samo tebi.
 A njoj je to rekao on, je li?
 Možda, nisam ga čuo, sjedio sam iza vas.

(These examples are translated on page 120.)

Dative of pronouns to express possession

In the text of this lesson note the use of the dative of pronouns to convey possession:

On mi je brat

He is my brother

Look at the text and see how many examples you can find. You should find five.

Exercise 4*

(a) Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 I saw him.
- 2 Did you know her?¹
- 3 They invited² us.
- 4 We heard³ them.
- 5 Please.⁴
- 6 I'm telling you the truth.⁵
- 7 Did you give the book to him?
- 8 We are going with them.
- 9 I often⁶ talk about her.
- 10 My⁷ parents are at our house now.

¹ order: aux., pronoun, participle; ² **pozvati**, pf.; ³ **čuti**, imp. and pf.; ⁴ lit. 'I pray you', use **moliti** + pron.; ⁵ **istina**; ⁶ **često**; ⁷ **moji**

(b) **Pitanja** (questions). Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 Jesu li Marija i Tomo rođaci?
- 2 Tko se oženio Marijinom sestrom?
- 3 Je li mu on rođeni brat?
- 4 Zašto Tomo ima polubrata?
- 5 Viđa li ga Tomo često?
- 6 Zašto Alan kaže da je u sličnom položaju?
- 7 Je li Alan često viđao svoju polusestru?
- 8 Gdje je stanovao Alan dok je studirao?
- 9 Tko je mlađi – Alan ili nećak?
- 10 Imate li vi braće⁸ i sestara?

⁸ pl. of **brat** collective: **braća** declined like a f. sg. noun

Translation of language in action examples

Use these as an exercise: translate them back again and then check with page 118.

I've lost the book. Have you seen it?

No, I haven't seen it. Perhaps Ivo has seen it.

You're right, I gave it to him yesterday.

Then see if he's got it. (lit. 'look for it at his place')

Do you know Mira's brother?

Yes, we met in the summer.

I remember, you came back from holiday together.

Did you ask him whether he remembers me?

Who told them that?

I don't know, I didn't tell *them*, only *you*.

And it was he who told her, was it?

Perhaps, I didn't hear him, I was sitting behind you.

NB See Appendix, section 3 for complete table of pronoun declensions.

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (10)

Mark describes his visit to the factory

Danas me je Jasna odvela u tvornicu da vidim razne proizvode. Bilo je sve jako zanimljivo. Pokazali su mi čitav proces proizvodnje, a ja sam njima objasnio kako se to sve radi kod nas. Razumije se da se prilično razlikuje, ali mislim da možemo ipak lijepo surađivati. Direktor je dugo razgovarao sa mnom o raznim mogućnostima.

odvesti (pf. **odvedem**) 'to take, drive, lead'; **tvornica** 'factory'; **zanimljiv** 'interesting'; **razan** 'various'; **proizvod** 'product'; **pokazati** (pf. **pokažem**) 'to show'; **čitav** 'whole'; **proizvodnja** 'production'; **razumije se** 'it is understood, it goes without saying'; **prilično** 'fairly; quite a lot'; **razlikovati se** (imp. **razlikujem**) 'to differ'; **surađivati** (imp. **surađujem** 'to co-operate'; **dugo** 'for a long time'; **razgovarati** 'to converse'; **mogućnost** (f.) 'possibility'

11 Putni planovi

Travel plans

In this lesson we will look at:

- the future tense
- using the long form of the future auxiliary
- structures with the future tense

Dialogue 1

Idemo na put

We're going on a journey

Alan and Nora are sitting with Slavko and Marija, making plans

ALAN: Moramo razmisliti o daljnjem boravku.

SLAVKO: Jeste li odlučili kamo ćete ići?

NORA: Uglavnom, ali svaki savjet će dobro doći.

MARIJA: Vi ćete ostati kod nas još dva dana, je li?

ALAN: Ako vam ne smetamo. Otputovat ćemo rano prekosutra.

SLAVKO: Hoćete li poći direktno na otoke ili ćete se zadržati u nekom gradu?

NORA: Želimo svakako vidjeti Split, ostat ćemo par dana tamo. A imamo prijatelje u Dubrovniku, dogovorili smo se da se nađemo s njima.

MARIJA: Bit će jako vruće u gradovima, ali vrijedi ih vidjeti.

ALAN: Meni neće biti teško, volim vrućinu, ali je Nora ne podnosi lako.

NORA: Imam jako nježnu kožu. Ali čuvat ću se, sjedit ću u hladu.

SLAVKO: Morat ćeš stalno nositi veliki slamnati šešir.

NORA: Valjda ću preživjeti!

- MARJA: Hoćete li poći iz Dubrovnika na Korčulu?
 ALAN: Tako smo planirali. Hoćemo li moći naći privatni smještaj na Korčuli?
 SLAVKO: Vjerujem da hoćete. Već je kasno. Krajem kolovoza se obitelji s djecom vraćaju s mora. Moraju se spremati za novu školsku godinu.

Vocabulary

čuvati (se) (imp.)	to take care of (oneself)	razmisliti (pf.)	to consider, to reflect
daljnji	further (comparative of dalek)	savjet	advice
godina	year	slamnat	straw
hlad	shade	školski (adj. from škola)	school
kasno	late	smetati (imp.)	to hinder, to get in the way
kolovoz	August	smještaj	accommodation
koža	skin	spremati se (imp.)	to get ready
krajem (I of kraj)	at the end	stalno	constantly
nježan (f. nježna)	tender	teško	difficult
odlučiti se (pf.)	to decide	uglavnom	on the whole
otok	island	valjda	presumably
otputovati (pf.)	to leave, to set off	vjerovati (imp. vjerujem)	to believe
par	pair, couple	vraćati se (imp.)	to return
podnositi (imp.)	to support, to bear	vrijedi (impers.)	it is worth
praviti (imp.)	to make	vrijediti (imp.)	to be worth
prekosutra	the day after tomorrow	vruć	hot
preživjeti (pf.)	to survive	vrućina	heat
rano	early	zadržati (se)	to stop, to hold up

Language points

The future tense

This is another compound tense and very simply formed. It consists of the infinitive and a new auxiliary: **htjeti** (to want). Like **biti**,

htjeti has two forms: a short form which is the norm, and a long form which must be used in certain circumstances, i.e. when placed in a position which carries stress.

	Short form	Long	Interrogative	Negative
(ja)	ću,	hoću	hoću li, da li ću?	neću
(ti)	ćeš	hoćeš	hoćeš li, da li ćeš?	nećeš
(on/ona/ono)	će	hoće	hoće li, da li će?	neće
(mi)	ćemo	hoćemo	hoćemo li, da li ćemo?	nećemo
(vi)	ćete	hoćete	hoćete li, da li ćete?	nećete
(oni/one/ona)	će	hoće	hoće li, da li će?	neće

Examples:

Ja ću spavati
I shall sleep

Hoćeš li doći?
Will you come?

Nećete uspjeti
You won't succeed

Use of the long form of the auxiliary

We have already observed that in Croatian and Serbian it is more common to answer questions with a verb than to use **da** or **ne**.

Jesi li umoran?

Jesam/Nisam

Htjeti is used in just the same way:

Hoćeš li doći?

Hoću/Neću

To ask and answer such questions, then, the long form of **htjeti** must be used. In all other circumstances, unless particular emphasis is required, the short form is used.

Examples of emphatic sentences:

Nise valjda umoran? Ja jesam umoran, ali ću ipak pomoći
You surely can't be tired? I am, but I'll still help.

Nećete valjda doći sada? Ja hoću, a Mira neće.

You're presumably not coming now? *I shall come*, but Mira won't.

Exercise 1

(a) Put the following sentences into the future tense (using the personal pronoun):

- 1 Ja sam rezervirao sobe.
- 2 On je putovao vlakom.
- 3 Mi smo večerali u ovom restoranu.
- 4 Ti si spavao u našoj sobi.
- 5 Oni su kupili kruha u gradu.
- 6 Vi ste bili naši gosti.
- 7 Ona je pila bijelo vino.
- 8 Da li ste posjetili Split?
- 9 Ja sam pozvala prijatelje k sebi.
- 10 Mi smo spremili večeru za sve.

(b) Put the following sentences into the future tense (without using the personal pronoun):

- 1 Putovao sam avionom.
- 2 Došli smo da te vidimo.
- 3 Sjedila je u hladu.
- 4 Pošao je na Korčulu.
- 5 Vidjeli su mnogo zanimljivih mjesta.

Language in action

Word order 4

As was the case with the past tense, the future auxiliary may precede or follow the main verb, depending on whether the pronoun is used or not.

Ja ću doći *but* **Doći ću**

With verbs ending in **-ti**, the final **-i** is removed and the future is then written:

Ja ću biti *but* **Bit ću**
Ti ćeš spavati **Spavat ćeš**
Mi ćemo vidjeti **Vidjet ćemo**

(In the Serbian variant, the infinitive and auxiliary are run together: **biću, spavaćeš, videćemo.**)

NB The enclitic follows the infinitive only if the infinitive is the *first* word in the sentence or clause. This is because the enclitic continues to obey the rule which places it as near the beginning of the sentence as possible.

Dialogue 2

Mary is visiting her friend Jadranka in Pula. She needs to have her hair cut. Jadranka takes her to the hairdresser

MARY: Kosa mi je očajna! Moram se ošišati!

JADRANKA: Odvest ću te mom frizeru.

MARY: Molim vas, želim malo skratiti kosu.

FRIZER: Dobro, gospodična. Hoćete li da vam napravimo trajnu?

MARY: Hvala, ne, samo malo skratite.

FRIZER: A da vam malo ofarbamo kosu? Bit će to lijepo za ljeto!

MARY: Hvala lijepa, ne. Zadovoljna sam bojom, samo što mi je kosa preduga!

kosa 'hair'; **očajan** 'desperate, terrible'; **ošišati se** 'to have one's hair cut'; **odvesti** 'to take (someone somewhere)'; **frizer** 'hairdresser'; **skratiti** 'to shorten'; **napraviti** 'to make'; **trajnu** 'permanent wave, perm'; **ofarbati** 'to colour, dye'; **boja** 'colour'; **predug** 'too long'

Language points

Examples of structures using the future tense

1 Affirmative

With pronoun or other 'prop'

Without preceding word

Aux.

Infinitive

(ja)	ću	doći s vama u kino	doći ću . . .
(ti)	ćeš	spavati do podne	spavat ćeš . . .
(ona)	će	baciti pismo na poštu	bacit će . . .
(mi)	ćemo	popiti po čašicu	popit ćemo . . .
(vi)	ćete	mirno čitati novine	čitati ćete . . .
(oni)	će	gledati televiziju	gledat će . . .

2 *Interrogative*

<i>Aux.</i>	<i>Interr. Emph. pron.</i>		<i>Question marker</i>	<i>Aux. Emph. pron.</i>	
	<i>part.</i>				
hoće	li	(one)	biti cijeli dan tu?	Da li	će (one) biti . . . ?
hoćete		(vi)	pomoći oko ručka?	ćete	(vi) pomoći?
hoće		(on)	nositi taj šešir?	će	(on) nositi . . . ?
hoćemo		(mi)	kupiti karte?	ćemo	(mi) kupiti . . . ?
hoćeš		(ti)	sačekati kod ulaza?	ćeš	(ti) sačekati?

3 *Negative*

<i>Aux.</i>	<i>Refl. Emph. pron.</i>	
	<i>part.</i>	
neće	se	(oni) dugo zadržati
nećemo		(mi) stići na vrijeme
nećeš		(ti) sjediti na suncu
neće	se	(on) uskoro vratiti
neću		(ja) više pušiti

4 *Negative interrogative*

<i>Aux.</i>	<i>Interr. Emph. pron.</i>		<i>Neg. question marker</i>	<i>Aux. Emph. pron.</i>	
	<i>part.</i>				
nećete	li	(vi)	sjesti do nas?	Zar	nećete (vi) sjesti . . . ?
neću		(ja)	poći s njima?	neću	(ja) poći . . . ?
neće		(ona)	pročitati pismo?	neće	(ona) pročitati . . . ?
nećeš		(ti)	platiti taksi?	nećeš	(ti) platiti . . . ?
nećemo		(mi)	probati glijive?	nećemo	(mi) probati . . . ?
neće		(one)	namjestiti krevet?	neće	(one) namjestiti . . . ?

Exercise 2

(a) Take the first three texts of 'Priča našeg vremena' and write them out, putting all the verbs in the future.

(b) Answer the following questions in the affirmative:

- 1 Hoće li Alan i Nora putovati u Split? _____
- 2 ALAN: Hoćemo li naći smještaj? MARIJA: _____
- 3 MARIJA: Hoćete li poći na Brač? ALAN: _____
- 4 NORA: Hoću li morati nositi šešir? MARIJA: _____
- 5 Hoće li Alan lako podnositi vrućinu? _____

(c) Answer these questions in the negative:

- 1 Hoće li Slavko i Marija poći s njima? _____
- 2 ALAN: Nećeš valjda sjediti na suncu? NORA: _____

- 3 SLAVKO: Hoćete li dugo biti u Splitu? ALAN: _____
 4 NORA: Hoću li moći hodati po suncu? MARIJA: _____
 5 NORA: Hoćemo li imati problema oko smještaja? SLAVKO: _____

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (11)

The telephone rings at Ivan's flat

- Halo, molim vas, je li tamo Mladen?
 - Nije. Tko ga treba?
 - Vesna na telefonu.
 - Vesna! Ovdje Ivan.
 - Oh zdravo, Ivane!
 - Mladena tražiš, dakle?
 -Da,-Vesna se zbunila. – Hoće li se uskoro vratiti?
 - Čekam ga svaki čas. Imaš li kakvu poruku?
 -Ne, da se javim kasnije?
 - Ne znam, možda će sa mnom na utakmicu. Ako mi kažeš o čemu se radi, reći ću mu pa će se on tebi javiti.
 - Dobro, hvalaHtjela sam ga samo pozvati k sebi, znam da ti izlaziš, pa da mu ne bude dosadnoAli, ako i on ide na utakmicuništa. Reci mu da će biti neko malo društvo kod mene, pa ako je raspoložen, bit će dobro došao
 - Hoću. Hvala, Vesna. Zdravo.
 - Hvala tebi, Ivane.
- Vesna spušta slušalicu i briše čelo. Jako joj je neugodno.

zbuniti se (pf. **zbunjen**) 'to be embarrassed'; **čekam ga svaki čas** 'I'm expecting him at any minute'; **poruka** 'message'; **o čemu se radi?** 'what's it about?'; **dosadan** 'boring'; **ništa** (here) 'never mind'; **raspoložen** 'in the mood'; **spuštati** (imp.) 'to put down'; **slušalica** 'receiver'; **brisati** (imp. **brišem**) 'to wipe'; **čelo** 'forehead'

Exercise 3*

(a) Complete the following dialogue:

At the 'Putnik' Travel Agent's

SLUŽBENIK: Dobar dan, izvolite.

VI: _____

SLUŽBENIK: Kako ćete putovati u Dubrovnik?

- VI: _____
 SLUŽBENIK: Možete putovati autobusom ili avionom.
 VI: _____
 SLUŽBENIK: Vlakom možete ići do ploča, onda autobusom.
 VI: _____
 SLUŽBENIK: Preporučujem vam zrakoplov. Kada želite otputovati?
 VI: _____
 SLUŽBENIK: Prekosutra ima dva mjesta na poslijepodnevnom letu.¹
 VI: _____
 SLUŽBENIK: Dobro. Na koje ime, molim?
 VI: _____
 SLUŽBENIK: Sad ću vam spremi karte.

¹ let 'flight'

(b) Translate into Croatian or Serbian:

I must make plans for (about) the holiday. I want to travel to Croatia at the beginning of June.¹ I shall visit friends in Zagreb. I'll stay a few days with them. Then I'll go to Split. I think I'll travel by train. I like the train and you can see a lot through the window. It will be hot, but that won't be difficult for me. I like the heat. I shall wear a hat all the time. Then I'll go to Hvar. I shall reserve a private room near the sea. Hvar is a very beautiful island. I've already² been there several times³ and I know that I love it.

¹ početkom lipnja; ² već; ³ više puta

(c) Rewrite each pair of sentences as a single sentence:

- 1 Neće sada doći. Kasno je.
- 2 Biće hladno na vrhu brda. Vidik je divan.
- 3 Ručat ćemo. Vi dođete.
- 4 Nije čuo vijesti. Ne gleda televiziju.
- 5 Možete sjediti vani. Želite.

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (11)

The director of the firm describes the working plan for each year

Direktor tvrtke je danas zakazao sastanak u glavnom uredu. Pokazao mi je poslovne projekte za cijelu godinu: što se radi

u proljeće, u jesen, ljeti i zimi. U proljeće se uglavnom potpisuju ugovori s proizvođačima sirovine – u ovom slučaju voća. Obilaze se poljoprivredne udruge i farme. Ljeti i na jesen ima najviše posla oko prerade sirovine i raznim sajmovima. Zimi se radi na održavanju pogona i na postizanju novih maloprodajnih mogućnosti.

zakazati sastanak (pf.) 'to convene a meeting'; **pokazati** (imp.) 'to show'; **poslovni** 'business' (adj.); **cijeli** 'whole'; **proljeće** 'spring'; **ljeti** 'in summer'; **jesen** (f.) 'autumn'; **zimi** 'in winter'; **uglavnom** 'mainly, on the whole'; **potpisivati** (imp., **potpisati** pf.) 'to sign'; **ugovor** 'contract'; **proizvođač** 'producer'; **sirovina** 'raw material'; **u ovom slučaju** 'in this case'; **voće** 'fruit'; **obilaziti** (imp.) 'to go round, visit'; **udruga** 'enterprise'; **prerada** 'processing'; **sajam** 'fair'; **održavanje** 'maintenance'; **pogon** 'plant'; **postizanje** 'acquisition'; **maloprodaja** 'retail'; **mogućnost** 'possibility'

12 Na pošti

At the post office

In this lesson we will look at:

- cardinal numbers 1, 2, 3, etc.
- the use of verbs with numbers
- telephone conversations

Dialogue 1

Moramo poći na poštu

We have to go to the post office

Nora and Alan need to visit a post office

NORA: Nešto sam htjela pitati, moramo poslati neka pisma i želimo se javiti telefonom djeci da čujemo kako su. Ima li neka pošta blizu hotela?

SLAVKO: Svakako. Glavna pošta je odmah do kolodvora. Tamo možete obaviti sve poslove. Otvorena je od 8 do 22. Manje pošte su obično otvorene do 20 sati.

ALAN: Znate li koliko košta telefonski razgovor s Engleskom?

SLAVKO: Neće biti jako skupo za tri minute.

ALAN: U redu, nećemo dugo razgovarati, je li Nora?

NORA: Nećemo naravno! Ali hajdemo odmah, nestrpljiva sam i djeca su sigurno kod kuće u ovo doba.
U pošti¹

SLUZBENICA: Izvolite, što želite?

NORA: Ove razglednice i dvije marke za Hrvatsku, molim.

SLUZBENICA: Izvolite. Još nešto?

¹ Note that it is possible to use both **na** and **u** here. When **u** is used, the speaker is thinking specifically of being *inside* the building.

- NORA: Trebam deset maraka za Englesku.
- SLUZBENICA: Deset puta dvije kune i četredeset lipa. Dakle: dvadeset četiri kune, plus tri za domaće marke, i četiri za razglednice, svega trideset i jednu kunu, molim.
- NORA: Onda, ovo je pismo jako važno. Želim ga poslati preporučeno.
- SLUZBENICA: Izvolite. Sve ukupno trideset šest kuna.
- ALAN: Nora, zar nismo htjeli poslati telegram da mami čestitamo rođendan?
- NORA: Imaš pravo. Molim vas gdje mogu naći formular za telegram?
- SLUZBENICA: Na šalteru pet, i tamo ga predajte.
- ALAN: Hvala, samo nam recite, molim vas, gdje se obavljaju međunarodni telefonski razgovori?
- SLUZBENICA: Izadite kroz staklena vrata. Vidjet ćete kabine na desnoj strani dvorane.
- ALAN: Najljepša hvala na pomoći.
- SLUZBENICA: Nema na čemu! Doviđenja.

NB The currency in Croatia is the **kuna**, a tenth of which is a **lipa**. In Bosnia and Hercegovina, Serbia and Montenegro, the **dinar** (a tenth of which is **para**) is used

Vocabulary

čestitati (imp.)	to congratulate	obaviti (pf.)	to carry out
dvorana	hall	obično	usually
formular	form	odmah	immediately
izadite (imperative of <i>izaći</i>)	go out	otvoren	open
kabina	booth	pomoć (f.)	help
koštati (imp.)	to cost	posao (G <i>posla</i> ; pl. <i>poslovi</i>)	job
manji (comparative of <i>mali</i>)	smaller	poslati (pf., <i>pošaljem</i>)	to send
marka	stamp	pošta	post office; mail
međunarodni	international	predati (pf.)	to hand in
najljepša hvala	thank you very much	preporučен	recommended, registered
nema na čemu	you're welcome	rođendan	birthday
nestrpljiv	impatient	sigurno	certainly

skup	expensive	u ovo doba	at this time
staklen	glass		(doba : n. and indeclinable)
šalter	counter		
ukupno	altogether	važno	important



Language points

Cardinal numbers

Numbers in Croatian and Serbian are something of a hurdle, but you will soon become accustomed to them, although they will probably seem quite complicated to start with!

(a) 1 **jedan**. This at least is straightforward, it is an ordinary adjective, declined like **umoran**:

jedan čovjek
jedna žena
jedno selo

Vidim jednog čovjeka
Dao je pismo jednoj ženi
Stanovali su u jednom selu

There are also plural forms:

jedni ljudi
jedne cipele
jedna vrata

some people
 one pair of shoes
 one door (**vrata**: n. pl.)

NB **jedan** is sometimes used in place of an indefinite article. **Jedna vrata** might be translated 'a door', depending on the context.

Otvorila su se jedna vrata
 A door opened

Exercise 1

Supply the correct form of **jedan**:

- 1 Kupila sam ____ lijepu modernu haljinu.
- 2 Idem u kino s ____ dobrim prijateljem.
- 3 Dali su kaput ____ staroj gospođi.
- 4 Možda ću upoznati ____ zgodnog milijunera.
- 5 Moraš dati svoje mjesto ____ starom gospođinu.

(b) Numbers 2, 3 and 4 and all compound numbers ending in 2, 3 and 4 (22, 23, 24, 92, 104, 553, 2084, etc.) are followed by the genitive singular:

dva mladića
dvadeset tri putnika
četiri sestre

The number 2 has both a masculine and a feminine form: **dva stola** but **dvije stolice**. There is also a neuter form for mixed gender pairs: **dvoje djece**, **dvoje zaljubljenih**. There are declensions for 2, 3 and 4 but they are hardly used in the modern language. You will find them in a grammar if you are interested.

When adjectives are used with the nouns following these numerals, the same endings are used:

dva umorna putnika
tri lijepe djevojke
četiri mala sela

(c) The remaining numerals, i.e. those higher than 5, are followed by the genitive plural:

5 **pet mladića** 6 **šest djevojaka** 7 **sedam sestara**
 8 **osam sinova** 9 **devet pisama** 10 **deset maraka**

Accompanying adjectives are also in the genitive plural:

12 **dvanaest lijepih konja** 35 **trideset pet starih knjiga**

Cardinal numbers

0 nula	7 sedam	14 četрнаest
1 jedan, jedna, jedno	8 osam	15 petnaest
2 dva, dvije	9 devet	16 šesnaest
3 tri	10 deset	17 sedamnaest
4 četiri	11 jedanaest	18 osamnaest
5 pet	12 dvanaest	19 devetnaest
6 šest	13 trinaest	20 dvadeset

21	dvadeset jedan <i>or</i> dvadeset i jedan	
22	dvadeset dva, dvadeset i dva (dvije) , etc.	100 sto <i>or</i> stotina
30	trideset	1,000 tisuća
40	četrdeset	1,000,000 milijun
50	pedeset	200 dvjesto <i>or</i> dvije stotine
60	šezdeset	300 tristo <i>or</i> tri stotine
70	sedamdeset	400 četiristo , 500 petsto , etc.
80	osamdeset	3,000 tri tisuće
90	devedeset	5,000,000 pet milijuna

Exercise 2

(a) Write out the following numbers in word form. (The translation is on page 138.)

- 1 Moramo rezervirati 2 sobe u hotelu.
- 2 U pošti kupujemo 3 marke.
- 3 Trebam 1 kovertu i 5 avionskih pisama.
- 4 Moraš poslati 1 preporučeno pismo.
- 5 Gdje mogu predati ova 4 paketa?
- 6 Moraš promijeniti tih 20 putničkih čekova u mjenjačnici.
- 7 Imamo 1 kreditno pismo za vašu banku.
- 8 Možete promijeniti 100 dolara u banci.
- 9 Žele podići 12 funti sa štedne knjižice.
- 10 Hoće uložiti ove 53 funte u poštansku štedionicu.

(b) Put the correct case of the nouns in brackets and write out the numerals in word form. ●●

- 1 U ovom hotelu ima 25 ____ (soba).
- 2 Marko ima 3 ____ (brat).
- 3 Molim vas, dajte mi 3 ____ (boca bijelog vina).
- 4 Na putu su posjetili 2 ____ (selo).
- 5 On ima preko tisuću ____ . (knjiga).
- 6 Ostat ćemo 7 ____ (dan).
- 7 Kupila je 4 ____ (haljina).
- 8 Izvadite 22 ____ (karta) za kazalište.
- 9 Večera u restoranu je stajala 742 ____ (kuna).
- 10 Bit ću 15 ____ (dan) na putu.

(c) Supply an appropriate adjective for each of the nouns in brackets in Exercise (b) and write out the sentences in full.

Language points

Use of verbs with numbers

2-4

(a) *Present*. The verb is plural:

Dva zgodna mladića se voze biciklom

Two handsome lads are riding bicycles

Tri visoke žene čekaju autobus

Three tall women are waiting for the bus

(b) *Past*. Past participle has the same ending as the adjective:

Došla su tri visoka mladića

Three tall young men came

Za stolom su sjedile dvije zgodne djevojke

Two good-looking girls were sitting at the table

5-20, etc. The verb is usually singular:

Dvadeset šest umornih putnika čeka autobus

Twenty-six tired travellers are waiting for the bus

Deset izvrsnih plivačica je skočilo u more

Ten excellent female swimmers dived into the sea

Exercise 3

Complete these sentences with the correct form of the adjective and noun:

- 1 (*umoran putnik*) Na stanici je čekalo pet ____ .
- 2 (*crvena boca*) Na zidu su stajale tri ____ .
- 3 (*sumnjiv tip*) U kupeu su sjedila dva ____ .
- 4 (*crni kofer*) U hodniku je stajalo sedam ____ .
- 5 (*prostrana soba*) Na park su gledale četiri ____ .
- 6 (*udoban stan*) U gradu se prodavalo šest ____ .
- 7 (*ukusno jelo*) Na stolu je čekalo pet ____ .
- 8 (*preporučeno pismo*) Dva ____ su stigla za oca.
- 9 (*telefonski razgovor*) Četiri ____ su dugo trajala.
- 10 (*ukusno jelo*) Pet ____ je čekalo na stolu.



Dialogue 2

Telefonski razgovor

A tourist in Zagreb is looking for a telephone box to make an urgent call

- A: Molim vas, gdje se nalazi najbliža telefonska govornica?
 B: Iza prvog ugla desno.
 A: Ta je govornica u kvaru. Mogu li se poslužiti vašim telefonom?
 B: Ako je hitno, izvolite.
 A: Hvala lijepa. Kažite mi poslije cijenu razgovora. Imate li telefonski imenik za Dubrovnik?
 B: Na žalost nemam. Ako znate ime i adresu pretplatnika, nazovite informacije.
 A: Dobar dan, trebam Dubrovnik. Mogu li nazvati direktno?
 C: Možete. Okrenite najprije pozivni broj.
 A: Želim govoriti na račun druge stranke.
 C: Dajte mi onda svoje ime. Broj je zauzet. Hoćete li pokušati kasnije?
 A: Da niste nazvali krivi broj?
 C: Pokušat ću ponovo. Nitko se ne javlja.
 A: Hvala, nazvat ću sutra.

(This dialogue is translated on page 138.)

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (12)

The girls are sitting, listening to music and waiting

- Jao, Miro, ovo je posljednji put što ti činim uslugu!
- Nije valjda! Je li ti zbilja bilo jako neugodno?
- Ne jako, nego strašno! Što će sad Mladen misliti o meni?
- Objasniti ću mu da sam ja kriva. Ne odmah, razumije se. Ali jednog dana. Je li Ivan pitao hoću li ja biti kod tebe?
- Nije, mislim da mu to nije palo na pamet.
- I bolje da nije.
- Je li, Miro, nećeš to valjda sakriti od njega?
- Neću, naravno. Izgleda da nemaš mnogo povjerenja u mene.
- Nije istina. Samo ne znam što kaniš.
- Ne znam ni ja, pravo da ti kažem. Ali ti mogu reći da od svega srca želim da Mladen dođe večeras.

jao 'help!' (expression of distress); **posljednji** 'last'; **put** 'time'; **činiti** 'to do'; **usluga** 'service, favour'; **strašan** 'terrible'; **odmah** 'immediately'; **razumije se** 'it goes without saying'; **pasti na pamet** 'to occur to someone'; **sakriti** (pf.) 'to hide'; **povjerenje** 'trust'; **istina** 'truth'; **nije istina** 'it's not true'; **kaniti** (imp.) 'to intend'; **pravo da ti kažem** 'to tell you the truth'; **srce** 'heart'

Exercise 4*

(a) Pitanja

- 1 Zašto se Nora željela javiti djeci?
- 2 Hoće li telefonski razgovor s Engleskom biti skup?
- 3 Zašto je Nora željela odmah poći?
- 4 Zašto je Nora poslala jedno pismo preporučeno?
- 5 Gdje se obavljaju međunarodni telefonski razgovori?

(b) Translate into Croatian or Serbian

Two travellers came out of the hotel. They wanted to send some letters and make a telephone call¹ to friends in Belgrade. 'Excuse me,' they said to a young woman in the street, 'do you know where there is a post office?'

'The main post office is next to the station. It is not far from here. Turn right and go straight on.'

'Thank you very much for your help.'

'You're welcome. Goodbye!'

¹telefonirati + D

Translation of Exercise 2(a)

- 1 We have to reserve two rooms at the hotel.
- 2 At the post office we buy three stamps.
- 3 I need one envelope and five air letters.
- 4 You must send one registered letter.
- 5 Where can I hand in these four parcels?
- 6 You must change those twenty traveller's cheques in an exchange office.
- 7 We have a letter of credit for your bank.
- 8 You can change \$100 in the bank.
- 9 They want to take £12 out of their savings book.
- 10 She wants to invest these £53 in her post office savings account.

Translation of Dialogue 2

- A: Where is the nearest public phone box, please?
 B: Round the corner on the right.
 A: That telephone is out of order. May I use your phone?
 B: Certainly, if it is urgent.
 A: Let me know how much the conversation costs afterwards. Have you got the telephone directory for Dubrovnik?
 B: Unfortunately not. If you have the name and address of the subscriber, ring enquiries.
 A: Good morning, I need Dubrovnik. Can I phone directly?
 C: Yes, ring the code first.
 A: I want to reverse the charge.
 C: Then give me your name. The number is engaged. Will you try later?
 A: Did you ring the wrong number?
 C: I'll try again. There's no reply.
 A: Thank you, I'll ring tomorrow.

Reading passage **Priča našeg vremena (12)**

The director of the firm explains the management structure

Danas je direktor objasnio da i u drugim gradovima Hrvatske tvrtka ima svoje ogranke. Sjedište tvrtke je naravno u Zagrebu, a ima još dvije velike tvornice (s Jasnom sam već

bio u jednoj, blizu Karlovca). Poslije toga dolaze pet mjesnih ureda, koji se uglavnom bave kupovinom sirovine na terenu. Svaka tvornica ima svog upravitelja, a svaki mjesni ured svog šefa neposredno odgovornog glavnom direktoru u Zagrebu.

više 'more, several' (+ G); **ogranak** 'branch, division'; **sjedište** 'head office'; **naravno** 'of course'; **mjesni** 'municipal, local'; **baviti se** 'to be concerned with'; **kupovina** 'purchase'; **na terenu** 'locally', 'in the field'; **neposredno** 'directly'; **upravitelj** 'manager'; **voditelj** 'leader'; **odgovoran** 'answerable, responsible to'

13 U kazalištu

At the theatre

In this lesson we will look at:

- ordinal numbers: first, second, etc.
- periods of time
- dates
- days of the week
- time of day



Hrvatsko narodno kazalište: The Croatian National Theatre

Dialogue 1

Idemo u kazalište

We are going to the theatre

Slavko and Marija suggest an evening at the theatre

Kad su se Alan i Nora vratili s pošte, Slavko i Marija su čitali novine u dnevnoj sobi

MARIJA: Koji je danas datum?

ALAN: Danas je ponedjeljak dvadeset drugi kolovoza.

MARIJA: Pitam jer baš gledam što se daje u kazalištu. Želimo vas večeras odvesti na neku predstavu. Ili možda više volite koncerte?

NORA: Ne, za nas je bolje ići u kazalište radi jezika.

SLAVKO: Tako smo i mi mislili. Dakle, što se daje, Marija?

MARIJA: Davat će se 'Hamlet iz Mrduše Donje'. To je izvrstan komad, ali na žalost premijera je tek početkom rujna.

SLAVKO: Ima li nešto od Krleže?

MARIJA: Baš ima, daje se 'U agoniji'.

ALAN: Čuo sam za Krležu. Je li jos živ?

SLAVKO: Nije, umro je krajem prosinca 1982, a rođen je 1893.

ALAN: Zanima me komad velikog hrvatskog pisca.

NORA: I mene. Hvala lijepa na prijedlogu.

SLAVKO: Onda dobro. Imamo sreće jer je ovo vanredna predstava: kazališta su inače zatvorena preko ljeta. Ja ću sad otići po karte. Gdje najviše volite sjediti, u parketu ili u loži?

NORA: Po mogućnosti u parketu, ne preblizu, recimo u desetom ili dvanaestom redu.

MARIJA: Na žalost u Dubrovnik ćete stići nakon Ljetnih igara. Baš čitam da su ove godine jako uspješno gostovali Zagrebački solisti. A predstavu 'Hamleta' na Lovrijencu uvijek vrijedi gledati.

NORA: Morat ćemo se vratiti druge godine! Posebno želim gledati neke narodne pjesove.

MARIJA: Može biti da se još uvijek daje 'Moreška' u Korčuli. Pokušajte je gledati ako imate prilike.

Vocabulary

bolje (comp. of dobro)	better	pokušati (pf.)	to try, to attempt
datum	date	poseban	special
gostovati (imp. gostujem)	to perform on tour	(f. posebna)	
imamo sreće	we're in luck	posebno	particularly
inače	otherwise	preblizu	too close
interesirati (imp.)	to interest	predstava	performance
karta	ticket	prijedlog	proposal
komad	piece, play	prilika	opportunity
loza	box (in the theatre)	radi (+ G)	for the sake of
Ljetne igre (Dubrovačke)	Dubrovnik Summer Festival	roditi se (pf.)	to be born
najviše (superl. of mного)	most	tek	only, not until
nakon (+ G)	after	umrijeti	to die
narodni ples	national, folk dance	(pf. umrem)	
novine (f. pl.)	newspaper	uspješan	successful
parter	stalls (theatre)	(f. uspješna)	
pisac (G pisca)	writer	vanredan	extra, special
po mogućnosti	if possible	(f. vanredna)	
početak	beginning	više voljeti	to prefer (lit. 'to like more')
		voditi (imp.)	to take, to lead
		zanimati (imp.)	to interest
		živ	alive

Language points 1

Ordinal numbers

These are very straightforward: all are regular definite adjectives.

1st	prvi, prva, prvo
2nd	drugi, druga, drugo
3rd	treći, treća, treće
4th	četvrti, četvrta, četvrto
5th–99th	peti, peta, peto – devedeset deveti, devedeset deveta, devedeset deveto

Ordinal numbers are formed by adding **-i** (m.), **-a** (f.), **-o** (n.) to the cardinal:

5th	peti, peta, peto
11th	jedanaesti, jedanaesta, jedanaesto
20th	dvadeseti
21st	dvadeset prvi
99th	devedeset deveti
100th	stoti, stota, stoto
200th	dvjestoti
999th	devetsto devedeset deveti

NB in compound numbers only the last element is declined:

Dubrovačke ljetne igre su se zatvorile dvadeset petog kolovoza
 The Dubrovnik Summer Festival closed on 25 August

Dialogue 2

Two tourists meet in the travel agent's in Zagreb

A: Jeste li prvi put u Zagrebu?

B: Jesam, a vi?

A: Daleko od toga! Ovo mi je peti put!

B: Već je treći put što sam u Hrvatskoj, a ranije nisam bio u Zagrebu.

A: A ja dolazim svake godine na more. Mora da mi je ovo deseti put što sam u Hrvatskoj!

A: *Is this the first time you've been to Zagreb?*

B: *Yes, what about you?*

A: *Far from it! This is my fifth time!*

B: *It's already the third time I've been to Croatia, but I haven't been to Zagreb before.*

A: *I come every year to the sea. This must be the tenth time that I've been to Croatia!*

Exercise 1*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 The room is on the second floor.
- 2 The post office is round the first corner on the left.
- 3 This is his¹ fifth book.
- 4 The bathroom is the third door on the right.
- 5 Is this your¹ first dinner in Dalmatia?

¹Use dative of pronoun

Vocabulary building

Time 1

Periods of time

Jedan dan ima dvadeset četiri sata, jedan tjedan ima sedam dana, jedan mjesec ima četiri tjedna, jedna godina ima dvanaest mjeseci ili tristo šezdeset pet dana.

dan 'day'; **sat** 'hour' (irreg. G. pl. **sati**); **tjedan** 'week'; **mjesec** 'month' (irreg. G. pl. **mjeseci**); **godina** 'year'

Dates

NB The names of the days of the week and months are not capitalised.

Days of the week (Sunday is counted as the first day):

nedjelja	Sunday	četvrtak	Thursday
ponedjeljak	Monday	petak	Friday
utorak	Tuesday	subota	Saturday
srijeda	Wednesday		

Months: While the Latin names are used throughout the region, Croatian has Slavonic ones which are now the norm:

januar	siječanj	juli	srpanj
februar	veljača	august	kolovoz
mart	ožujak	septembar	rujan
april	travanj	oktobar	listopad
maj	svibanj	novembar	studenj
juni	lipanj	decembar	prosinac

Koji je danas datum?

What is the date today?

Danas je ponedjeljak, prvi siječanj/januar

Today is Monday, 1 January

There is a further, less frequent, possibility: using the ordinal numerals for the appropriate month: **Danas je ponedjeljak prvi prvoga.**

Seasons

proljeće	spring
jesen	autumn
ljeto	summer
zima	winter

Exercise 2

Write out the following sentences in full:

- 1 Danas je utorak (22, kolovoz).
- 2 Jučer je bio petak (15, srpanj).
- 3 Sutra će biti srijeda (8, svibanj).
- 4 Prekjučer je bila subota (28, lipanj).
- 5 Prekosutra će biti nedjelja (11, veljača).
- 6 Prije tri dana bio je četvrtak (6, ožujak).
- 7 Za pet dana će biti ponedjeljak (25, prosinac).

Expressions of time

'On Monday' etc. is expressed by **u** + accusative: **u ponedjeljak**, **u srijedu**. Other dates on which an event occurs are expressed by the genitive:

Stigli smo četvrtog kolovoza (augusta)

We arrived on 4 August

Moja kći ima rođendan drugog septembra (rujna)

My daughter's birthday is 2 September

Other expressions of time follow a similar pattern:

Slijedećeg dana su ustali jako rano

They got up very early (on) the next day

Tog tjedna sam zaista zaposlen

I'm really busy that week

Te godine će biti velika proslava

There will be a great celebration that year

Duration of time is generally expressed by the accusative:

Pokušavam te dobiti telefonom cijeli dan

I've been trying to get you on the phone all day

Provest ćemo mjesec dana u Zagrebu

We shall spend a month in Zagreb

Oni su stanovali godinu dana u ulici do naše, a nismo ih upoznali

They lived in the next street to ours for a year, but we didn't meet them

Habitual events, occurring on specific days of the week, are expressed by the instrumental:

Subotom uvijek nekuda idemo u šetnju

We always go somewhere for a walk on Saturdays

Obično idu u klub utorkom

They usually go to the club on Tuesdays

Exercise 3*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 They will come on Monday.
- 2 You will stay until Saturday, won't you?
- 3 On Wednesdays I play football.
- 4 We are going to the cinema on Friday.
- 5 What are you doing on Sunday?
- 6 I always phone¹ (my) mother on Saturdays.
- 7 We go for a walk with the children on Sundays.
- 8 They are coming to dinner on Wednesday.
- 9 She arrived early on Thursday.
- 10 He has invited you to the theatre on Saturday.

¹javljati se (imp.)

Dialogue 3 **Ljubavna priča (13)**

It was already late, and Mladen had not come.

Djevojke su sjedile i slušale glazbu. Bilo je već kasno, a Mladen nije dolazio

- Znam da neće doći, kaže Mira utučenim glasom.
- Možda je tako bolje.
- Jao Vesna – kaže njihova drugarica Ankica – ti ništa ne poduzimaš, ništa ne riskiraš. Kakav je to život, bez ikakve opasnosti, ili barem nesigurnosti?

– U redu, priznajem da to može biti dosadno, ali kad su u pitanju tuđi osjećaji, baš neću ništa riskirati.

Zvono. Ankica baca pogled na Miru.

– Sva si blijeda, Miro! S tobom se nešto ozbiljno događa!

Vesna ide na vrata. Uskoro se čuje Mladenov glas:

– Baš ti hvala što si se sjetila mene!

– Pa normalno je, kad si ti inače sam, a mi ovdje sjedimo.

Izvoli u sobu. Donijet ću kolač koji sam ispekla s Mirom.

utučen 'depressed'; **poduzimati** (imp.) 'to undertake'; **riskirati** (imp.) 'to risk'; **opasnost** 'danger'; **nesigurnost** 'uncertainty'; **priznavati** (imp.) 'to acknowledge'; **dosadan** 'boring'; **osjećaj** 'feeling'; **tuđi** 'other people's'; **zvono** 'bell'; **baciti pogled** 'to glance'; **blijed** 'pale'; **događati se** (imp.) 'to happen'; **inače** 'otherwise'; **donijeti** (pf.) 'to bring'; **ispeći** (pf.) 'to bake'

Vocabulary building

Time 2

Time of day

jutro, prije podne	morning
podne	noon
poslije podne	afternoon
večer	evening
noć	night
ponoć	midnight

There is also a useful series of adverbs: **jutros** 'this morning'; **večeras** 'this evening'; **noćas** 'tonight'; **sinoć** 'last night'.

Koliko je sati?	What time is it?
Sada je jedan sat	It's now one o'clock
dva sata	2 o'clock
pet sati (G. pl.)	5 o'clock
devet sati i pet minuta	5 past 9
deset i petnaest	quarter past 10
deset i četvrt	
jedanaest i pol/trideset	half past 11
pol dvanaest¹	

¹NB Care must be taken by those accustomed to English 'half twelve', which in Croatian and Serbian would mean 11.30.

Imate li točno vrijeme?

Have you got the right time?

dvadeset pet do jedan	25 to 1
petnaest do dva	quarter to 2
četvrt do dva	
deset do tri	10 to 3

Exercise 4 

(a) Write out the times in the following passage in full (the translation is on page 149):

Radnim danom Bojan ustaje jako rano: u 5.30. Na brzinu se umiva i brije. Oblači se. U 6 doručkuje. Malo jede i izlazi iz kuće u 6.20. Ima točno 13 minuta hoda do autobusne postaje. Autobus polazi u 6.35. Vožnja traje oko 17 minuta, ovisno o prometu. Ako se žuri i ni s kim usput ne razgovara, Bojan stiže na posao u 6.58. Vozi se liftom do ureda na 4-om katu, vješa ogrtač iza vrata i u 7.03 vec sjedi za radnim stolom.

(b) Write an account of your own daily routine.

Culture point

In most Balkan countries the working day starts very early: at 7 or 8 a.m. This means that people finish work at 2 or 3 p.m. Generally speaking, they do not eat a substantial breakfast. They may have a snack, which can be the equivalent of a light English lunch, in the middle of their morning, but the main meal of the day is lunch, which may be eaten any time between 2 and 4 p.m. when the household has reassembled.

Exercise 5

Pitanja

- 1 Kad je rođendan Alanove majke?
- 2 Kamo će Slavko i Marija odvesti Cameronove?
- 3 Zašto Nora misli da je dobro ići u kazalište?
- 4 Daje li se 'Hamlet iz Mrduše Donje'?
- 5 Kad je umro hrvatski pisac Miroslav Krleža?
- 6 Jesu li kazališta u Zagrebu otvorena cijele godine?
- 7 Gdje Nora voli sjediti?
- 8 Hoće li Cameronovi stići u Dubrovnik za vrijeme Ljetnih igara?

- 9 Što Nora naročito želi gledati?
 10 Što im Marija preporučuje?

Translation of the text in Exercise 4

On working days Bojan gets up very early: at 5.30. He washes and shaves quickly. He gets dressed. At 6 he has breakfast. He eats little and leaves the house at 6.20. There is exactly 13 minutes' walk to the bus stop. The bus leaves at 6.35. The journey lasts about 17 minutes, depending on the traffic. If he hurries and doesn't talk to anyone on the way, Bojan gets to work at 6.58. He takes the lift to his office on the fourth floor, hangs his coat on the back of the door and at 7.03 he is already sitting at his desk.

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (13)

Mark is making plans for the rest of his stay in Croatia

Danas po povratku iz ureda, sjeo sam s Jasnom u hotelskom baru da se dogovorimo o mom daljem boravku. Imam još dva tjedna na raspolaganju. Želim se upoznati s radom svakog ogranka, pa smo se odlučili da ćemo prekosutra, dakle petog listopada, krenuti autom u obilazak cijele mreže. Počet ćemo na sjeveru i obići ćemo sva istočna područja. Onda ćemo, oko desetog, krenuti prema zapadu, i vratit ćemo se južnim putem. Stići ćemo sedamnaestog u Karlovac.

po povratku 'on (our) return'; **sjesti** (pf. **sjednem**); **dogovoriti se** 'to discuss and come to an agreement'; **na raspolaganju** 'at (one's) disposal'; **prekosutra** 'the day after tomorrow'; **dakle** 'therefore'; **obilazak** 'visit (going round)'; **cijeli** 'whole'; **mreža** 'net, network'; **sjever** 'north'; **istok** 'east', **istočni** (adj.) 'eastern'; **područje** 'region, area'; **krenuti** (pf. **krenem**) 'to set off'; **zapad** 'west'; **jug** 'south', **južni** 'southern'; **vratiti se** (pf. **vraćati se**, **vraćam se** imp.) 'to return'

14 Pakiranje

Packing

In this lesson we will look at:

- the comparative of adjectives
- the comparative of adverbs
- structures with the comparative
- the superlative
- clothes, colours

Dialogue 1

Što trebamo za put?

What do we need for the journey?

The Camerons are preparing to leave Zagreb. Marija has come to give them a hand

Alan i Nora se spremaju oputovati iz Zagreba. Odlučili su iznajmiti auto. Bit će tako slobodniji, moći će se zaustavljati gdje žele i samo putovanje će biti ugodnije nego u krčatom vlaku. Marija je došla da im bude pri ruci

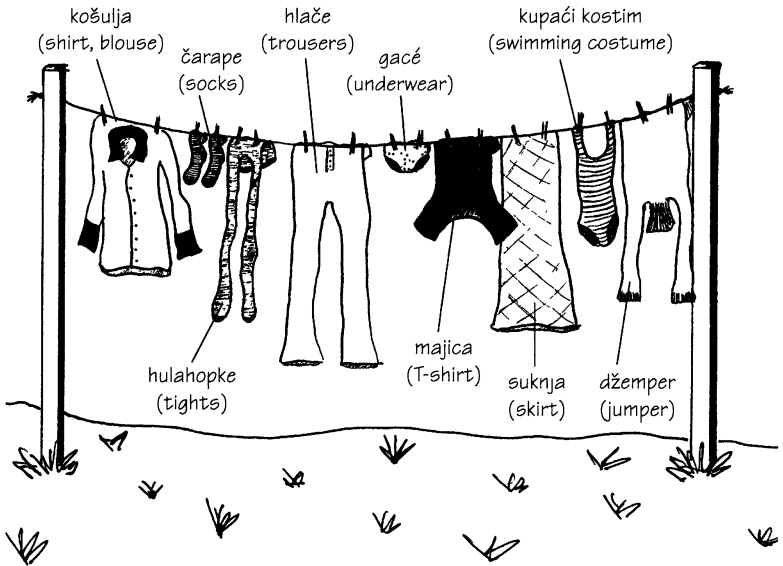
ALAN: Stavit ćemo sve što trebamo na putu u ovaj manji kofer. Tako nećemo morati sve stalno vaditi iz auta. Molim te da sad napraviš najuži izbor!

NORA: Evo, izvoli. Već sam odvojila neke stvari. Putovat ću u ovoj haljini. Lako se pere i ne gužva se. Nosit ću ove sandale i uzet ću jaknu za svaki slučaj. Mogu valjda vaditi iz auta i onu veću crnu torbu. U nju možemo metnuti stvari za noćenje. Dok ti pakiraš, ja mogu još ponešto oprati. Gdje su prljave košulje?

- ALAN: Na dnu ormara. Ima i nekoliko čarapa i nešto donjeg rublja. Možeš metnuti i kupaće kostime u crnu torbu.
- MARIJA: Što ti je lijepa ova zelena suknja, nisam je ranije vidjela.
- NORA: Ne, nisam je dosad nosila u Zagrebu. Mogu i nju ponijeti na put, jako je zgodna i lijepo ide uz ovu žutu bluzu.
- MARIJA: Ali majice su praktičnije za put, kad ne možeš ništa peglati. Zašto ne uzmeš ovu plavu majicu?
- NORA: Imaš pravo. Uzet ću i ove lake ružičaste hlače i crveni džemper, jer će možda biti svježije navečer. Ponijet ću i hulahop čarape.
- ALAN: Nema više mjesta u manjem koferu! Ako nam još nešto zatreba lako ćemo to izvaditi iz većeg ali ništa više ne primam!

Vocabulary

biti pri ruci	to be at hand	pakirati (imp.)	to pack
bluza	blouse	peglati (imp.)	to iron
čarapa	sock, stocking	ponešto	something
hulahop čarape	tights	ponijeti (pf., ponesem)	to take, carry
crven	red	praktičan	practical
dno	bottom	(f. praktična)	
donje rublje	underclothes	prati (imp., perem)	to wash
dosad	up to now	primati (imp.)	to accept, receive
džemper	jumper	prljav	dirty
gužvati (imp.)	to crumple	ružičast	pinkish
hlače (f. pl.)	trousers, slacks	sladak (f. slatka)	sweet
izbor	choice	staviti (pf.)	to put, to place
iznajmiti (pf.)	to hire	suknja	skirt
jakna	jacket	svjež	fresh, cool
košulja	shirt	uzak (f. uska)	narrow
krcat	crowded	(uži comp.)	
kupaći kostim	swimsuit	vaditi (imp.)	to take out
majica	T-shirt	zaustavljati se	to stop
napraviti (pf.)	to make	(imp.)	
noćenje	spending the night	zelen	green
odijelo	clothing	žut	yellow
odvojiti (pf.)	to separate		
pakiranje	packing		



Language points

Comparative adjectives

(a) Most comparatives are formed by the addition of the endings **-iji, -ija, -ije**, etc. to the indefinite adjective:

star	stariji, starija, starije
poznat	poznatiji, poznatija, poznatije
gladan	gladniji, gladnija, gladnije

Adjectives ending in **-o** derived from **I** have these endings added to the **I** which we have seen returns in oblique cases:

mio (dear)	miliji, milija, milije
veseo	veseliji, veselija, veselije

(b) Other adjectives have the suffix **-ji**, although this is not always obvious: the exact form depends on the final consonant of the indefinite masculine – as we know, certain combinations of letters result

in regular consonant changes. Do not be too alarmed, you will soon learn those comparatives which are in frequent use.¹

¹ For a complete list of consonant changes, see Appendix, section 6.

jak (strong)	k + j: č	jači
drag (dear)	g + j: ž	draži
tih (quiet)	h + j: š	tiši
ljut (angry)	t + j: ć	ljući
tvrd (hard)	d + j: đ	tvrdi

If the adjective stem ends in **p**, **b** or **v** an **l** is often inserted after this consonant:

skup (expensive)	skuplji
grub (coarse)	grublji

But, **lijep ljepši**

Comparative adjectives are declined like regular definite adjectives.

Examples

Tko je stariji – Ivo ili Ante?

Who is older – Ivo or Ante?

Ante je stariji, iako je Ivo viši

Ante is older, although Ivo is taller

Je li vaša nova kuća novija?

Is your new house newer?

Nije, nego je udobnija

No, but it's more comfortable and closer

I mi sada stanujemo u mirnijoj ulici. Više volim manja mjesta

We live in a quieter street now as well. I prefer smaller towns

Imaš li vijesti od svog mlađeg brata? Imam, izgleda da mu je bolje: u planinama je zrak svježiji i čistiji nego u dolini

Have you any news of your younger brother? Yes, he seems to be better: the air in the mountains is fresher and cleaner than in the valley

Dajte mi bocu tog slađeg vina; skuplje je ali mi se čini da je ukusnije. Svakako ima ljepšu boju!

Give me a bottle of that sweeter wine; it's more expensive, but it seems tastier. It's certainly a nicer colour!

Exercise 1

Supply the appropriate form of the comparative (* indicates mobile 'a'):

- 1 Onaj auto je star, ali ovaj je ____
- 2 Direktor ovog hotela je uljudan*, ali ovaj je ____
- 3 Vlak kojim smo putovali bio je spor, ali ovaj je još ____ (spor 'slow').
- 4 Ta studentica je ozbiljna, ali čini se da je ova ____
- 5 Taj hotel se nalazi u bučnoj ulici, ali je ova još ____ (bučan 'noisy')
- 6 Vodič kojeg su oni imali bio je veseo, ali je ovaj ____ (vodič 'guide')
- 7 More je bilo bistro tamo, ali ovdje je još ____ (bistar 'clear')
- 8 Moji stari roditelji su energični, ali tvoji su još ____
- 9 Te mlade žene su simpatične, ali ove djevojke su ____
- 10 Sela u Dalmaciji su slikovita, ali ova na brdima su ____ (slikovit 'picturesque'; brdo 'hill')

Comparison of adjectives ending in -ak, -ek, -ok

Most adjectives with these endings drop the final syllable and form the comparative by the addition of **-ji** to the resulting stem:

blizak (near)	bliži
kratak (short)	kraći
dalek (far)	dalji
dubok (deep)	dublji
rijedak (rare)	rjeđi
visok (tall)	viši

Exercise 2*

Supply the correct form of the comparative:

- 1 Moramo poći (*kratak*) putem.
- 2 Možete večerati u (*blizak*) kavani.
- 3 Volim plivati u (*dubok*) moru.
- 4 Navikao sam se penjati po (*visok*) brdima.
- 5 Žele se voziti čamcem oko (*dalek*) otoka.
- 6 Moraš vezati kofer (*jak*) konopcem.
- 7 Spavat ćemo bolje u (*tih*) mjestu.
- 8 Moji roditelji sada stanuju u (*velik*) kući. (*comp.* **veći**)
- 9 Isplati se rezervirati sobe u malo (*skup*) hotelu.
- 10 Za doručak čaj je bio gorak, ali čini mi se da je kava bila (*gorak*).

Comparison of adverbs

Where the neuter singular of an adjective is used as the adverb, the neuter singular of the comparative is similarly used:

(jako)	jače	more strongly
(lako)	lakše	more easily
(blizu)	bliže	more closely
(drago)	draže	more dearly
(skupo)	skuplje	more expensively
(teško)	teže	with more difficulty
(rado)	radije	more gladly

Irregular comparatives

Several common adjectives and adverbs have quite irregular comparative forms:

dobar	bolji
zao (bad)	gori (used also as comp. of loš bad)
velik	veći
malen	manji
mnogo	više
malo	manje

Jeste li naučili sve nove riječi?

Have you learned all the new words?

Manje više

More or less

Superlative

The superlative is formed by the addition of the prefix **naj-** to the comparative: **najstariji**, **najbliži**, **najbolje**, **najviše**, **najmanje**, etc.

Exercise 3*

(a) Turn back to the text about Zagreb in Lesson 8, p. 89. Identify all the superlatives and write out the original form of the adjectives.

(b) Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 I prefer travelling by plane, although it's more expensive.
- 2 He wants to send this letter by the quickest way.

- 3 Please give me a smaller piece for the child.
- 4 She will sleep better in a quieter room.
- 5 Have you got (any) larger jumpers?

Dialogue 2

Two sisters are arguing about what to take on holiday

A: Nećeš valjda vući sve ovo sa sobom!

B: Što? Tko mi zabranjuje?

A: Previše je! A osim toga, sve je samo crno ili bijelo!

B: A ti ćeš sad odlučiti o mom ukusu, je li?

A: Smiri se! Samo kažem, malo je tužno bez ijedne druge boje!

B: Hvala na brizi. Ti gledaj svoj posao. Nosi sve boje duge, ako ti je volja. A mene pusti na miru!

A: *You're presumably not going to drag all that lot with you!*

B: *Why not? Who's forbidding me?*

A: *It's too much! And besides, it's all just black or white!*

B: *So you're going to decide about my taste, are you?*

A: *Calm down! I'm just saying, it's a bit sad without a single other colour!*

B: *Thanks for your concern. You mind your own business. Wear all the colours of the rainbow, if you want. But leave me alone!*

Vocabulary building

Colours

Crn 'black' (also used for red wine), **bijel** 'white', **siv** 'grey', **smeđ** 'brown', **žut** 'yellow', **zelen** 'green', **plav** 'light blue', **modar** 'deep blue', **ljubičast** 'mauve', **crven** 'red', **ružičast** 'pinkish', **žutkast** 'yellowish', **sivkast** 'greyish'

Exercise 4*

Translation (Prijevod)

We are going on holiday on Saturday, the day after tomorrow! We don't want to carry much, so we'll take only the most essential things.¹ I have one small suitcase and one large bag. I shall take trousers and a jumper, because it is

¹ essential, use necessary: **potreban**

sometimes cool in the evening, three dresses, a skirt, two T-shirts, two blouses, shoes, stockings and underwear. (My) husband will take trousers, five shirts, three T-shirts, shorts² and two jumpers. He can carry the swimming costumes and towels.³

² šorc (sg.); ³ ručnik

Language points

Comparison to an object or phrase

When two objects are compared the preposition **od** + genitive is generally used:

Moj brat je stariji od tebe

My brother is older than you

Zrakoplov je skuplji od vlaka

The plane is more expensive than the train

Tvoj sin je viši od tvog muža, zar ne?

Your son is taller than your husband, isn't he?

But when the comparison involves a whole phrase the conjunction **nego** must be used:

Kasnije je nego što sam mislila

It's later than I thought (it was)

Avionom se putuje brže nego vlakom

It's quicker to travel by plane than (it is to travel) by train

NB **nego** may also be used instead of **od** + genitive:

On je stariji nego ti

Tvoj sin je viši nego tvoj muž

Language in action

Structures with the comparative

Notice the following structures:

sve + comparative 'more and more, increasingly'

Svakim danom sve bolje vladate našim jezikom

You speak our language *better and better* with each day

Moram priznati da sve rjeđe pišem pisma

I must confess that I write (letters) *increasingly rarely*

Vrijeme sve brže prolazi!

Time passes *increasingly quickly!*

što + comparative 'as . . . as possible'

Dođite nam opet što prije!

Come again *as soon as you can!*

Sjedi što bliže!

Sit *as near as possible!*

Rekao je da će pisati što češće

He said that he would write *as often as possible*

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (14)

As soon as Mladen came in, an awkward silence fell among the girls

Čim je Mladen ušao, nastala je neugodna tišina među djevojkama.

– Dobro, mlade dame, ponudite mi da sjednem!

– Oprosti, Mladene, baš smo neuljudne! Hodi ovamo, molim te, i sjedni do Ankice na divanu. Bit će ti ugodnije nego na tom stolcu. Mira je ustala s divana da mu ponudi svoje mjesto.

– Nemoj ustajati, ima mjesta za sve.

Mladen je sjeo, sasvim blizu Mire, koja je još uvijek bila neobično blijeda.

– Hajde – rekla je veselo Ankica – pričaj nam što si radio danas. Sviđa li ti se još uvijek Zagreb?

– Razumije se – počeo je Mladen, s namjerom da svoje riječi kao obično okrene na šalu. Onda se predomislio i ušutio.

Cijelo veče je prošlo ugodno ali nekako tiho i kao potišteno.

Slušali su glazbu, pili pivo a na kraju su čak i propjevali.

Ali pjevali su uglavnom tužne bosanske sevdalinke.

nastati (pf.) 'to begin, occur'; **tišina** 'silence'; **među** (+ I) 'among'; **ponuditi** (pf.) 'to offer'; **oprostiti** (pf.) 'to forgive'; **neuljudan** 'impolite'; **hodi ovamo** 'come over here'; **stolac** 'chair'; **nuditi** 'to offer'; **namjera** 'intention'; **obično** 'usually'; **okrenuti** (pf.) **na šalu** 'to make a joke'; **predomisli se** (pf.) 'to change one's mind'; **tih** 'quiet'; **potišten** 'subdued'; **čak** 'even'; **propjevati** (pf.) 'to break into song'; **uglavnom** 'on the whole'; **tužan** 'sad'; **sevdalinka** (Bosnian) 'love song'

Exercise 4

(a) Complete the dialogue

You are in a department store, buying a jumper for a relative.

PRODAVACICA: Izvolite, mogu li vam pomoći?

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Trebate li lakši ili topliji džemper?

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Želite li neku posebnu boju?

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Imamo samo ove zelene džempere od sintetike.

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Imamo lijepe vunene džempere u plavoj ili crvenoj boji.

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Trebate li veći ili manji broj?

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Možda ce vam odgovarati ovaj plavi.

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Izvolite. Platite na blagajni¹ molim.

VI: _____

PRODAVACICA: Nema na čemu. Do viđenja.

¹ **blagajna** 'cash desk'

(b) Describe the contents of a large suitcase you are taking on holiday, giving the colour of each item.

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (14)

Mark has started packing for his trip round the firm's branches

Počeo sam se spremati za put, a ustanovio sam da nisam od kuće ponio dovoljno košulja. Bit će teško bilo što ispeglati dok smo na putu, pa mislim da će biti pametno ako kupim jos

par košulja koje se mogu oprati i odmah osušiti. Kako veći dućani rade do osam uvečer, ići ću sutra poslije službenog ručka sa zastupnicima Gospodarstvene komore. Za taj sastanak ću morati obući sako i kravatu – što je neugodno, jer sam se potpuno odviknuo u neformalnoj sredini 'našeg' ureda.

spremati se 'to prepare, get ready'; **ustanoviti** (pf.) 'to establish'; **ponijeti** (pf.) 'to bring'; **dovoljno** 'sufficient'; **bilo što** 'anything'; **ispeglati** (pf.) 'to iron'; **pametno** 'clever', 'sensible'; **kupiti** (pf. **kupovati**, **kupujem** imp.) 'to buy'; **par** 'a couple, a few' (+ G. pl.); **oprati** (pf. **operem**) 'to wash'; **odmah** 'at once'; **osušiti** (pf.) 'to dry'; **služben** 'official'; **zastupnik** 'representative'; **Gospodarstvena komora** 'Chamber of Commerce'; **obući** (pf. **obučem**) 'to put on (of clothes)'; **sako** 'jacket'; **odviknuti se** (pf.) 'to get unused to, to lose the habit'; **sredina** 'surroundings, milieu'

15 Polazak

Departure

In this lesson we will look at:

- demonstrative pronouns: 'this', 'that'
- possessive adjectives
- preparing for a car journey
- driving, route planning

Dialogue 1

Polazimo na put

We set off on our journey

The day before the Camerons set off, Marija telephones to ask whether they can take her nephew with them

MARIJA: Nora, imam veliku molbu. Moj brat je trebao danas odvesti mog malog nećaka, Ranka, k baki u Zadar. Međutim, žena mu se dosta teško razboljela. Odveli su je u bolnicu. Sada nema nikoga da čuva Ranka. Trebamo naći nekoga tko će ga odvesti k baki. Mislila sam na vas.

NORA: Bez daljnijega, jako rado. Nemamo nikakvog određenog plana pa ga lako možemo odvesti do Zadra. Samo nam trebaš pokazati na karti kojim je putem najbolje ići. Koliko godina ima dječak?

MARIJA: Sedam. Mali je dobar i razuman. Mislim da vam neće biti teško s njim.

Na dan polaska, Slavko i Marija su rano došli u hotel s Rankom. Sjeli su za stol i Slavko je izvadio kartu.

- SLAVKO: Ovako, vi ćete izaći iz Zagreba ovim putem koji vodi za Karlovac.
- ALAN: Kakav je put?
- SLAVKO: Izvrstan. Plaća se cestarina, ali nije skupa. Južno od Karlovca su brijegovi Gorskog kotara. Zimi je taj put malo neugodan.
- NORA: Nećemo žuriti, pa ćemo se vjerojatno zaustaviti negdje na putu. Koje je zgodno mjesto?
- MARIJA: Ako imate vremena da prenoćite na Plitvicama, to se zaista isplati. Ali vam treba barem jedan dan za obilazak jezera.
- ALAN: Molim te, zabilježi ovdje točno kome trebamo predati maloga, i eventualno javiti ako se odlučimo zadržati dan dva na putu.

Vocabulary

barem	at least	određen	specific
bez daljnjega	it goes without saying, of course	odvesti (pf.)	to take
bolnica	hospital	odvezem	(transport)
brijeg	hill	plaćati (imp.)	to pay
cestarina	road toll	polazak	departure
dječak	boy	prenoćiti (pf.)	to spend the night
dosta	enough	razboljeti se	to be taken ill
isplatiti se (pf.)	to be worth	(pf. razbolim)	
jezero	lake	razuman	sensible
južno	to the south	(f. razumna)	
međutim	however	vjerojatno	probably
molba	request	zimi	in winter
obilazak	visit, looking round	žuriti (se) (imp.)	to hurry

Language points

Demonstrative pronouns

We have already come across the demonstrative pronouns **taj** and **ovaj** in the course of the lessons, in several different cases. Here is the declension of **taj** in full.

	Singular			Plural		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N	taj	to	ta	ti	ta	te
G	tog(a)	tog(a)	te	tih	tih	tih
D	tom(u)	tom(u)	toj	tim(a)	tim(a)	tim(a)
A	tog(a)/taj	to	tu	te	ta	te
P	tom(e)	tom(e)	toj	tim	tim	tim
I	tim(e)	tim(e)	tom	tim	tim	tim

taj (that), **ovaj** (this) and **onaj** ('that,' i.e. further than **taj**) are all declined on this model.

Exercise 1

Put the demonstrative pronouns into the correct case:

- 1 Treba li poći (ova) ulicom?
- 2 Da, skrenite lijevo kod (taj) semafora.¹
- 3 Prolazite pored (ta) velike zgrade.
- 4 Onda produžite² (ovaj) putem do (ona) raskršća.³
- 5 Na (taj) putu ćete vidjeti većinu⁴ (one) novih kuća.
- 6 Vidite li (ona) veliku novu zgradu?
- 7 Muzej se nalazi na (taj) malom trgu.
- 8 Gdje je (taj) put na (ova) karti?
- 9 Možete stići do katedrale (ove) malim uličicama.
- 10 Telefonska govornica se nalazi na kraju (ona) ulica.

¹ **semafor** 'traffic lights'; ² **produžiti** 'to continue'; ³ **raskršće** 'crossroads'; ⁴ **većina** 'majority'

Possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives can be formed from proper nouns or nouns denoting people.

Masculine nouns ending in a consonant or **-o** have the ending **-ov**:

Antun	Antunov	Antunov brat	Antun's brother
Marko	Markov	Markov novi auto	Marko's new car
putnik	putnikov	putnikov šešir	the passenger's hat

If the final consonant is 'soft', the suffix becomes **-ev**:

prijatelj	prijateljev	prijateljev pas	(my) friend's dog
Đorđe	Đorđev	Đorđev mali sin	Đorđe's little son
Petrović	Petrovićev	Petrovićev ured	Petrović's office

Feminine nouns ending in **-a** drop the final **-a** and replace it by **-in**:

Marija	Marijin	Marijin brat	Marija's brother
sestra	sestrin	sestrin nećak	(my) sister's nephew

These possessive adjectives are then declined like regular definite¹ adjectives with the appropriate endings added to the new suffix:

Antunova sestra je ovdje	Antun's sister is here
Vidjela sam Markovog brata	I saw Marko's brother

Jesi li to rekao putnikovoj sestri?

Did you tell that to the passenger's sister?

NB These forms cannot be preceded by a qualifying adjective:

Ovo je putnikova torba

but **To je torba onog drugog putnika**

Examples:

Je li Slavko Jasnin muž?	Ne, Slavko je Marijin muž.
A kako se zove Alanova žena?	Zove se Nora.
Tko je mali Ranko?	On je Marijin nećak.
Gdje živi dječakova baka?	U Zadru, živi s Marijinom mlađom sestrom.
Je li to ranije bila Antunova kuća?	Jest, na Babićevom trgu.

¹ You will also find indefinite endings for masculine possessives.

Exercise 2*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 Is that Jasna's husband?
- 2 Where are the passenger's gloves?
- 3 I met (my) wife at Slavko's sister's.¹
- 4 We are travelling in Ivan's new car.
- 5 Will you be seeing Ana's mother?
- 6 The tickets are in Nora's bag.
- 7 Are you going to the cinema with Tomo's brother?
- 8 She wants to meet (my) wife's nephew.
- 9 Did you see the teacher's hat?
- 10 They left² the luggage in Marko's car.

¹ kod . . . sestri; ² ostaviti

Reading passage 1

Autom do Plitvičkih jezera

Od Zagreba do Karlovca vodi moderan auto-put u pravcu jadranske obale. Ovaj put prolazi kroz plodnu i živopisnu dolinu rijeke Korane. Kod sela Rakovice put skreće za Split, a poslije nekoliko kilometara vide se prvi bukovi i vodopadi nacionalnog parka Plitvička jezera. Ovo veličanstveno djelo prirode predstavlja jednu od najvećih atrakcija u Evropi i jedno od najprivlačnijih mjesta u unutrašnjosti Balkana. Šesnaest jezera, prekrasnih plavozelenih pastelnih boja, u kojima se ogleda zelenilo gustih šuma, bukovima i vodopadima slivaju se jedna u drugo. Neki su slapovi visoki po trideset i do sedamdeset osam metara, a neki izvanredno lijepi su mnogo manji. Staze spajaju jezera, što posjetiocima omogućuje da potpuno upoznaju i uživaju u ljepoti i miru ovog prekrasnog prirodnog fenomena. Da bi se u potpunosti sačuvala ljepota ovog područja, zabranjena je vožnja automobilima u neposrednoj blizini jezera.

Try to translate the passage on your own; you will find all the necessary vocabulary in the glossary. You can check your version with the translation on page 168 when you are satisfied.

Dialogue 2

Razgovor kod benzinske pumpe

Conversation at the petrol pump

Mr Filipović is on the road and thinks he has lost his way. He goes to fill up with petrol

- F: Molim vas, gdje je najbliža benzinska postaja?
 A: Kod prvog velikog raskršća.
 B: Koliko litara želite?
 F: Napunite, molim vas, i provjerite ulje i vodu.
 B: Da napunim akumulator destiliranom vodom?
 F: Molim. Već sam jučer provjerio ulje za kočnice.
 B: Da provjerim gume?
 F: Molim. Tlak mora biti jedan i šest prednje jedan i osam zadnje.
 Imate li dobru autokartu ovog područja?

B: Izvolite.

F: Hoćete li mi pokazati na karti točno gdje se nalazim? Mislim da sam na pogrešnom putu.

B: Idite ravno ovim lokalnim putem. Izaći ćete kod semafora na glavnom putu za centar grada.

(This dialogue is translated on page 168.)

Exercise 3

Odgovorite na slijedeća pitanja (answer the following questions):

- 1 Kamo je trebalo odvesti Ranka?
- 2 Zašto Marijin brat nije mogao poći u Zadar?
- 3 Zašto je Marija došla k Alanu i Nori?
- 4 Hoće li moći pomoći¹ Mariji?
- 5 Kakav je dječak i koliko ima godina?
- 6 Zašto je Alan želio pogledati kartu?
- 7 Kojim² putem će izaći iz Zagreba?
- 8 Kakav je to put?
- 9 Što Marija preporučuje?
- 10 Zašto Slavko kaže da ne moraju brinuti?

¹pomoći, pf. 'to help' + D; ²koji 'which'

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (15)

It is getting late and Mira has to go home

U jedanaest sati Mira je pogledala na sat.

- Jao, djeco, moram odmah poći. Ubit će me stari ako zakasnim.
- Imaš pravo, vrijeme je – kaže Ankica – moram i ja poći.
- Na koju stranu idete? – pita Mladen. – Mogao bih vas ja otpratiti.
- Baš si ljubazan. Pa ja stanujem tri kuće odavde! Prema tome ne bi ti oduzelo mnogo vremena. Ali Mira ima više od pola sata do kuće.
- Oh, hvala. Navikla sam. Imam autobus manje više ispred kuće. Ništa mi ne treba – kaže Mira odlučno.
- Možda, ali tako sam odgojen. Što mogu, ne bih mirno spavao da znam da hodaš sama u noći.

- Hvala ti onda. Samo da uzmem kišnu kabanicu pa možemo poći ako si toliko uporan!
- Ni riječi više. Još jednom ti hvala, Vesna, bilo je jako ugodno.
- Hvala što si došao. Do viđenja. Zdravo, Miro.
- Bog, Vesna, do sutra. I . . . hvala.

sat 'watch'; **ubiti** (pf.) 'to kill'; **otpratiti** (pf.) 'to accompany'; **stanovati** (imp, **stanujem**) 'to live, reside'; **odavde** 'from here'; **prema tome** 'consequently'; **oduzeti** (pf. **oduzmem**) 'to take away, to take up'; **navikao** 'accustomed'; **odlučno** 'decisively'; **odgojen** 'brought up'; **kišna kabanica** 'raincoat'; **uporan** 'persistent'; **ni riječi više** 'not another word'



Exercise 4

Look at the map and describe the location of the main towns and their relationship to the others, e.g.:

Karlovac je 30 km od Zagreba. Dubrovnik se nalazi južno-istočno od Knina. Od Zadra do Šibenika idete prema sjeveru.

Translation of Reading passage 1: By car to the Plitvice Lakes

A modern motorway leads from Zagreb to Karlovac towards the Adriatic coast. This road passes through the fertile and picturesque valley of the Korana river. At the village of Rakovica the road turns towards Split, and after a few kilometres the first cascades and waterfalls of the Plitvice Lakes National Park can be seen. This magnificent work of nature represents one of the greatest attractions of Europe and one of the most attractive places in the interior of the Balkans. Sixteen lakes, of beautiful blue-green pastel colours, in which the green of dense forests is reflected, pour into one another in cascades and waterfalls. Some cascades are 30 and even up to 78 metres high, while some exceptionally beautiful ones are far smaller. Paths link the lakes which enable visitors to get to know them all completely and to enjoy the beauty and peace of this beautiful natural phenomenon. In order that the beauty of this area should be completely preserved, the driving of cars is prohibited in the immediate proximity of the lakes.

Translation of Dialogue 2

- F: Where is the nearest petrol station?
A: At the first big crossroads.
B: How many litres would you like?
F: Fill it up, please. And check the oil and water.
B: Shall I top up the battery with distilled water?
F: Please. I already checked the brake oil yesterday.
B: Shall I check the tyres?
F: Please. The pressure should be 1.6 for the front tyres, 1.8 for the back. Have you got a good road map of this area?
B: Here you are.
F: Would you show me exactly where I am on the map? I think I am on the wrong road.

B: Go straight along this local road. You will come out by the traffic lights on the main road to the city centre.

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (15)

Mark describes Jasna's arrival for their trip

Jutros sam rano ustao. Otkazao sam sobu i platio račun. U dogovoreno vrijeme se Jasna pojavila u nekom nepoznatom autu. Pitao sam je hoćemo li putovati tim autom, i objasnila mi je da je auto posudila od tvrtke jer je veći, ima više mjesta za stvari i bit će nam ugodnije na putu. Osim toga, ako treba moći ćemo odvesti kolege na poslovne ručkove ili večere, što nismo mogli onim drugim autom. A Jasna je rekla da će joj ipak nedostajati, jer joj je mnogo stalo do tog starog, pouzdanog 'druga'.

rano 'early'; **ustati** (pf. **ustanem**) 'to get up'; **platiti** (pf.) 'to pay'; **račun** 'the bill'; **dogovoreno** 'agreed'; **pojaviti se** (pf.) 'to appear'; **nepoznat** 'unknown'; **posuditi** (pf.) 'to borrow'; **osim toga** 'apart from that, besides'; **poslovni** 'business'; **nedostajati** (imp. **nekome**) 'to miss' (lit. 'to be lacking to someone'); **stalo (mi) je do** (+ G) 'I am fond of, I care about'; **pouzdan** 'reliable, trusty'; **drug** 'pal'

16 U kvaru

Breakdown

In this lesson we will look at:

- possessive pronouns: my, your, etc.
- parts of a car

Dialogue 1

Nešto nije u redu s autom

Something's wrong with the car

On the second day of their journey, Alan notices a strange noise in the engine

Prvi dan je prošao bez uzbuđenja. Bilo je lijepo, sunčano vrijeme, ali ne prevruće. Alan i Nora su uživali u krajoliku. Krenuli su rano slijedećeg dana da izbjegnu najveću vrućinu. Poslije sat dva, Alan je usporio vožnju

NORA: Što je, Alane, zašto si se zaustavio?

ALAN: Motor lupa; čudno zvuči.

NORA: Ništa ne čujem na svojoj strani.

ALAN: Na ovim uzbrdicama kao da nema snage. Kao da mu je sve teže.

NORA: Bio je jednom sličan problem i s našim autom, sjećaš se?

ALAN: Kako da ne! Mehaničar dugo nije mogao doći do rezervnog dijela, pa sam morao posuditi auto.

Auto je stao na zaustavnoj traci ceste i Alan je izašao. Podigao je haubu i pogledao unutra. Pregledao je razne dijelove.

ALAN: Sad ću ga pokušati ponovno upaliti.

Ali ovog puta, motor je bio potpuno mrtav.

NORA: Ti ostani ovdje, ja ću pokušati naći nekoga da me prebaci do najbližeg servisa. Ranko, ti ćeš ostati s Alanom da mu praviš društvo.

ALAN: Važi. Ja ću samo pogledati kartu koju nam je Slavko dao. Čini mi se da su servisi zabilježeni na toj karti.

Nora je pošla do ruba ceste i dala znak da im treba pomoć. Poslije svega dvije tri minute zaustavio se jedan auto.

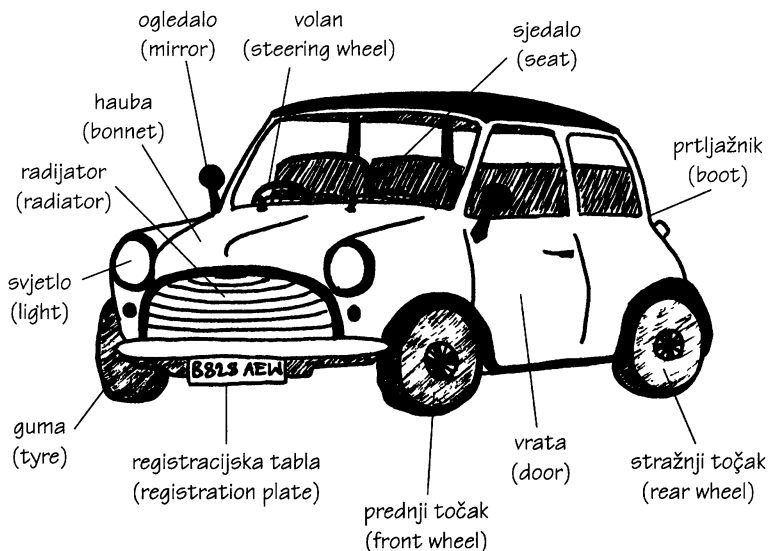
VOZAC: Treba li vam pomoći?

NORA: Molim vas, naš auto je u kvaru. Moram otići do najbližeg servisa.

VOZAC: Rado ću vas odvesti. Ima oveći servis par kilometara odavde.

Vocabulary

čudan (f. čudna)	strange	prevruć	too hot
čuti (imp. čujem)	to hear	rub	edge
dio (G dijela)	part	sad ću	I'll just . . .
doći do	to get to, to reach	servis	repair shop, garage
dugo	a long time	slijedeći	following, next
hauba	bonnet	snaga	strength
izbjeći (pf. izbjegnem)	to avoid	stati (pf. stanem)	to stop
lupati (imp.)	to knock	sunčan	sunny
motor	engine	svega (G of sve)	in all
mrtav (f. mrtva)	dead	unutra	inside
podići (pf., podignem)	to raise	upaliti (pf.)	to ignite
ponovo	once more	usporiti (pf.)	to slow down
posuditi (pf.)	to borrow, hire	uzbrdica	uphill slope
potpuno	completely	uzbuđenje	excitement
potreban (f. potrebna)	necessary	uživati (imp.)	to enjoy (u necemu)
praviti nekome	to keep someone	zabilježen	noted, marked
društvo	company	zaustavna traka	hard shoulder
prebaciti (pf.)	(here) to give a lift	znak	sign, mark
		zvučati (imp., zvučim)	to sound



Language points 1

Possessive pronouns

The declensions of possessive pronouns are straightforward and the endings are already familiar to you from those of adjectives and demonstrative pronouns.

moj, tvoj, svoj

Singular			
	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N	moj	moje	moja
G	mog(a) mojeg(a)	mog(a) mojeg(a)	moje
D	mom(e) mojem(u)	mom(e) mojem(u)	mojoj
A	as N or G	moje	moju
P	as D		
I	mojim	mojim	mojom

Plural	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N	moji	moja	moje
G	mojih	mojih	mojih
D	mojim(a)	mojim(a)	mojim(a)
A	moje	moja	moje
P	<i>as D</i>		
I	mojim(a)	mojim(a)	mojim(a)

Where there are alternative longer and shorter forms, the shorter form is always the more common. See Appendix, section 2.

Use of svoj. Except in a few set phrases (i.e. **On je svoj čovjek** 'He is "his own" man'), this cannot be used in the nominative. It cannot be the subject as it is used to refer to the subject. It may be used of any person, singular or plural, to denote things pertaining to that person:

Vidjet ću svog sina

I shall see my son

Bili su u svojoj kući

They were in their house

Idemo svojim autom

We are going in (by) our car

Exercise 1*

Translate into Croatian or Serbian, using **moj**, **toj** or **svoj** as appropriate:

- 1 We'll get our things ready.
- 2 They were not in their room when I went in.
- 3 I saw your sister at the post office.
- 4 Are you travelling in your car?
- 5 My daughter has gone to England with some friends of hers.
- 6 Is your son at his friend's house?
- 7 They are going to visit my parents.
- 8 I live with my mother in London.
- 9 We were in your house yesterday.
- 10 He must write to his sister!
- 11 Are you looking for your bag?
- 12 Her father is celebrating his eightieth birthday.

13 Is he travelling in my car? (use instrumental)

14 He should give this book to his mother.

15 Will she sleep in your room?

Possessive pronouns (contd.)

naš, vaš (our, your)

Singular			
	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N	naš	naše	naša
G	našeg(a)	našeg(a)	naše
D	našem(u)	našem(u)	našoj
A	<i>N or G</i>	naše	našu
P	našem(u)	našem(u)	našoj
I	našim	našim	našom
Plural			
	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N	naši	naša	naše
G	naših	naših	naših
D	našim(a)	našim(a)	našim(a)
A	naše	naša	naše
P	našim(a)	našim(a)	našim(a)
I	našim(a)	našim(a)	našim(a)

njegov, njen (njezin), njihov (his, her, their). These are easily remembered if you take the genitive (long form) of **on, ona, oni** respectively as the starting point. (These pronouns are often declined like indefinite adjectives, i.e. *m.* and *nt.*)

G njegova, njena, njihova

D njegovu, njenu, njihovu

So are possessive adjectives formed from nouns, with endings **-ov** and **-in.**)

Exercise 2

Remember that it is possible to express possession by using the dative of the personal pronoun. Replace the dative personal pronouns in the following sentences by the appropriate possessive pronoun, as in the example:

Je li ti ona djevojka?

Is she your girl-friend?

Je li ona tvoja djevojka?

- 1 Danas joj je sedmi rođendan.
- 2 Znaš li gdje su mi naočale?¹
- 3 Ovo mi je nova kuća.
- 4 Upoznala sam mu mlađeg brata.
- 5 Zar mu je sestra već udata?
- 6 Gdje su nam stvari?
- 7 Hoće li im se kćer uskoro vratiti?
- 8 Sad mu je izašla prva knjiga.
- 9 Dođi da nam vidiš sobu!
- 10 Kava vam je na stolu, ohladit će se!²

¹ naočale 'glasses'; ² ohladiti se 'to get cold'

Dialogue 2

Ljubavna priča (16)

The atmosphere in the bus is awkward

Mira je sjedila u autobusu bez riječi.

- Što si tako šutljiva, pita veselo Mladen – to nije u tvom stilu, koliko sam mogao primijetiti.
- Pa i nije, imaš pravo.
- Što ti je onda, nešto si mi tužna?
- Nisam, zaista, ne znam što mi je ovih dana. . . . Pustimo to. Dokle misliš ostati u Zagrebu?
- Ne znam točno. Jos nekoliko dana.
- Imaš li . . . obaveza . . . ? počinje Mira – Čeka li te . . . netko?
- Djevojka, misliš?
- Pa . . . bilo tko.
- U neku ruku da. Idem već dosta dugo s jednom curom ali . . .
- Ali . . . ?
- Ne znam dokle će trajat. A ti, koliko dugo ste ti i Ivan skupa?
- Bit će skoro godinu dana. Ali . . .
- Ali?
- Bolje o tome ne govoriti. Ne smijem. Pogotovo ne s tobom.
- Zašto? Zar nismo prijatelji?
- Jesmo, Mladene. Hajde! ovo je moja postaja.

šutljiv 'quiet'; veselo 'cheerfully'; stil 'style'; tužan 'sad'; pustiti (imp.) 'to leave'; dokle 'until when'; obaveza 'obligation, responsibility'; počinjati (imp. počinjem) 'to begin'; bilo tko 'anyone'; u neku ruku 'in a way'; ići s 'to go out with'; skupa 'together'; skoro 'almost'; smjeti (imp. smijem) 'to dare, to be allowed'; ne smijem 'I may not'; pogotovo 'particularly'

Exercise 3*

(a) Pitanja

- 1 Kakvo je bilo vrijeme prvog dana Alanovog i Norinog puta?
- 2 Što su svi radili na putu?
- 3 Zašto su krenuli rano slijedećeg dana?
- 4 Što se desilo poslije dva sata vožnje?
- 5 Jesu li ranije imali sličan problem sa svojim autom?
- 6 Gdje je auto stao?
- 7 Što je radio Alan kad je zaustavio auto?
- 8 Što je predložila Nora?
- 9 Je li morala dugo čekati?
- 10 Da li je bilo daleko do servisa?

(b) Fill in the gaps with the appropriate prepositions from the list below. The English translation is on page 177. Do not consult it until you have completed the exercise to your satisfaction.

Naš auto je ___ kvaru. Mi smo ___ autoputu Zagreb–Karlovac, nekih petnaest kilometara ___ Karlovca. Možete li poslati mehaničara ___ nas? Izgleda da nešto nije ___ redu ___ motorom. Muž mi je ostao ___ autom. Ja sam ___ auta. Možete li doći ___ pol sata? Hoćete li moći i mene povesti ___ kamionu? Hvala, čekat ću ovdje ___ ovoj klupi ___ suncu.

u na od do s bez za

(c) Translate the following passage into Croatian or Serbian:

- Hello, is that Marko? I'm ringing¹ to say that we're setting off to the coast on Saturday.
- Lucky you! I hope you will have good weather. Is there anyone to look after your cat?² I shall gladly come in from time to time.
- Thank you, that's nice of you. Zlatan's nephew will be here and he will probably bring some of his friends.
- Where are you going? Have you booked rooms somewhere?
- No, we haven't. We shall presumably find private accom

¹ 'to ring' javljati se; ² 'cat' mačka

modation without any problem. We don't know exactly where we shall be.

- And when are you coming back?³
- We can only stay five days. Will you be in Zagreb when we get back?³
- Yes, I shall go to Italy later.
- Good, we'll see each other soon then.
- Have a good journey!⁴

³'to come back': think about which aspect to use in each case – **vraćati se** (imp.), **vratiti se** (pf.); ⁴'good journey' **sretan put!**

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (16)

Mark has returned to Zagreb after an interesting trip around Croatia

Sinoć sam se vratio s puta. Bilo je sve jako zanimljivo ali moram priznati da sam se jako umorio. Nisam uopće imao vremena pisati dnevnik. Cijeli dan smo bili na nogama. Tijekom dana detaljno smo razgledali tvornice i razgovarali s ljudima u područnim uredima. Dobio sam jasan pregled cijele mreže ove rasprostranjene tvrtke. Poslije službenog posjeta, obavezno su slijedili poslovni ručkovi i večere, na kojima su nas bogato ugostili ogromnim količinama ukusnih jela i pića.

priznati 'confess, admit'; **umoriti se** 'to tire oneself'; **pregled** 'overview'; **rasprostranjen** 'widespread'; **obavezno** 'compulsory'; **obilno** 'abundantly'; **ugostiti** 'to entertain'; **ogroman** 'huge'; **količina** 'quantity'; **ukusan** 'tasty'

Exercise 4

Look at the diagram of the car on p. 172 and describe the location of the various named parts and their relationship to the others: e.g. **Prtljažnica se nalazi iza sjedala. Motor je ispod haube.**

Translation of Exercise 3(b)

Our car has broken down. We are on the Zagreb–Karlovac motorway, some 15 km. from Karlovac. Can you send a mechanic to us? It seems that something's wrong with the engine. My husband has stayed with the car. I'm without a car. Can you come in half an hour? Will you be able to take me in the truck? Thank you, I shall wait here on this bench in the sun.

17 U kupovini

Shopping

In this lesson we will look at:

- interrogative pronouns: 'who', 'what', etc.
- relative pronouns: 'who', 'which', etc.
- shopping for food
- aspect 2
- lost items, visiting a police station

Dialogue 1

Idemo u kupovinu

We're going shopping

As they wait in a small town for their car to be mended, the Camerons go shopping

Dok su čekali da im se auto popravi u malom mjestu gdje su se slučajno našli, Alan, Nora i Ranko su otišli u kupovinu

NORA: Što ti najviše voliš, dušo?

RANKO: Ne znam, sve! Uvijek sam gladan! Volim meso i voće, pa kolače, bombone, sladoled. Oh, i čokoladu!

ALAN: Uđimo u ovo samoposluživanje, tu ćemo naći sve što trebamo.

NORA: Alane, hoćeš li ti potražiti kruh dok ja idem s Rankom vidjeti koji sir i kakvo suho meso mu se sviđaju?

ALAN: U redu, uzet ću i salatu, rajčice i slično. Jedeš li ti paprike i krastavce, Ranko?

RANKO: Jedem. A jako volim kruh!

- ALAN: Kupit ću onda mnogo kruha! Naći ćemo se kod povrća kad završite.
- NORA: Uzmimo dvadeset deka ovog pršuta i cijelu ovu salamu. Prijlično je skupa ali će trajati. Onda, neki tvrdi sir. Zapravo više volim bijeli sir, ali nije praktičan za put.
- RANKO: Ja volim onaj sir u trokutima u malim okruglim paketicima. Evo ga!
- NORA: Uzet ću i nekakve konzerve za svaki slučaj. Recimo ovu paštetu. A sad da potražimo Alana.
- ALAN: Ah, evo vas. Vidite kakav je lijep izbor voća.
- NORA: Mnoga djeca vole banane, jesi li ti jedan od tih?
- RANKO: Baš nisam. Volim breskve, marelice, lubenice, dinje, grožđe . . .
- ALAN: A smokve?
- RANKO: Ni slučajno!
Platili su sve na blagajni.

Vocabulary

blagajna	till	pašteta	paté
bombon	sweet	platiti (pf.)	to pay
breskva	peach	popraviti (pf.)	to mend
čokolada	chocolate	potražiti (pf.)	to look for
deka (abbrev. of dekagram)	10 grammes	povrće (coll.)	vegetables
dinja	sweet melon	recimo	let's say
grožđe (coll.)	grapes	salama	salami
jesti (imp. jedem)	to eat	samoposluživanje	supermarket
kolač	cake	sladoled	ice cream
konzerva	tin (of food)	sličan (f. slična)	similar
krstavac (G krstavca)	cucumber	slučajno	by chance
lubenica	water melon	ni slučajno	not on your life!
marelica	apricot	za svaki slučaj	just in case
naći (pf., nađem)	to find	suh	dry
okrugao (f. okrugla)	round	trajati (imp.)	to last
ostali	other, remaining	trokut	triangle
paprika	green, red pepper	tvrd	hard
		voće (coll.)	fruit
		zapravo	actually
		završiti (pf.)	to finish

Language points

Interrogative pronouns

	tko (<i>who</i>)	što (<i>what</i>)
N	tko	što
G	koga	čega
D	kome, komu	čemu
A	koga	što
P	kom, kome	čemu
I	kim, kime	čim, čime

Tko je na vratima?

Who's at the door?

S kim si putovala?

Who did you travel with?

Kod koga ste prenoćili?

At whose place did you spend the night?

Što ste kupili?

What did you buy?

Čega se boji?

What's he afraid of? (**bojati se** + G)

O čemu se radi?

What's it about?

The indefinite pronouns – **netko** (someone) and **nitko** (no one) – are declined like **tko**; **nešto** (something) and **ništa** (nothing) are declined like **što**.

Razgovarala je s nekim

She was talking to someone

Sjetila sam se nečega

I've remembered something

Nikoga nismo vidjeli

We didn't see anyone

Nisu se ničega sjećali

They couldn't remember anything

NB But where negative compound pronouns occur with prepositions, the preposition is placed between the component parts:

Ne viđa se ni s kim

He doesn't see anyone

Ni od koga nemamo vijesti

We've no news from anyone

Uzrujavaš se ni zbog čega

You're getting upset about nothing

Dialogue 2

Two friends meet in the park

A: Čekaj! Hoću te nešto pitati!

B: Izvoli. O čemu se radi?

- A: S kim si bio sinoć? Netko je nekome rekao da sam pobijedio na lutriji!
- B: Čestitam ti! Misliš da sam to ja? Nisam nikome rekao! Nisam ni znao!
- A: Ali nije istina! Netko je to izmislio! Onda je moja žena od nekoga nešto čula.
- B: Pa ja ništa ni od koga nisam čuo, nisam se ni s kim vidio!
- A: *Wait! I want to ask you something!*
- B: *Go ahead. What's it about?*
- A: *Who were you with last night? Someone told someone that I had won the lottery!*
- B: *Congratulations! You think it was me? I didn't tell anyone! I didn't even know!*
- A: *But it isn't true! Someone made it up! Then my wife heard something from someone.*
- B: *Well, I didn't hear anything from anyone, I haven't seen anyone!*

Language points

Relative pronoun koji, koje, koja (who, which)

	Singular			Plural		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N	koji	koje	koja	koji	koja	koje
G	kojeg(a)	kojeg(a)	koje	kojih	kojih	kojih
D	kojem(u)	kojem(u)	kojoj	kojim(a)	kojim(a)	kojim(a)
A	<i>N or G</i>	koje	koju	koje	koja	koje
P	kojem(u)	kojem(u)	kojoj	kojim(a)	kojim(a)	kojim(a)
I	kojim	kojim	kojom	kojim(a)	kojim(a)	kojim(a)

Notice that the declension is very similar to that of **moj**.

It is important to distinguish between the interrogative pronoun **tko** and the relative pronoun **koji**. This is not always easy in practice as in some parts of the country genitive and dative of **koji** (masculine and neuter) are identical to genitive and dative of **tko**. It is awkward also because English uses 'who' for both functions.

The relative pronoun cannot be omitted, as tends to occur in English, particularly when it is used as an object: 'the man I saw. The town you visited'. In Croatian and Serbian these must always be present:

the man whom I saw **čovjek kojeg sam vidio**
 the town which you visited **grad koji ste posjetili**

Examples:

Tko je ta dama s kojom sam vas vidio sinoć?
 Who is that lady I saw you with last night?

To je moj prijatelj iz Engleske o kome sam ti pričao
 That's my friend from England I told you about

Vlak kojim su oni putovali kasnio je pola sata
 The train they travelled by was half an hour late

NB When you have to translate such English sentences as the above, first establish whether a relative pronoun has been omitted and then use the appropriate form of **koji**.

In certain circumstances **što** can be used as a relative pronoun, and it must be used after neuter indefinite pronouns: **ovo, to, ono, nešto, ništa, jedino, prvo, sve**.

Svida mi se ono što sam vidjela
 I like what I have seen

Imate li sve što trebate?
 Have you got all you need?

Ima nešto o čemu moram s vama govoriti
 There is something I must speak to you about

Nisu razumjeli ni riječ od onoga što smo im rekli
 They didn't understand a word of what we told them

Exercise 1*

Translate the following sentences into Croatian or Serbian:

- 1 The letter which came this morning is on the table.
- 2 Where is the book you gave me?
- 3 The friends we travelled with are now in England.
- 4 That's the first letter he's written to me!
- 5 I think that we've lost the address she gave us.
- 6 Is this the hotel in which your sister works?
- 7 Who was the girl you were at the cinema with last night?
- 8 The friend I gave your address to is coming tomorrow.
- 9 The car they travelled by is very small and old.
- 10 Isn't that your cousin whom we met last year?¹

¹ prošle godine

Relative pronoun čiji, čije, čija (whose)

Čiji is declined like **koji**, agreeing in all respects with the noun which follows it:

Čiji je taj lijepi šešir?

Whose is that nice hat?

Znaš li čije su te naočale?

Do you know whose those glasses are?

Čijim ste autom došli?

Whose car did you come in?

U čijoj smo kući bili?

Whose house were we in?

Dialogue 3

U policiji

At the police station

When they return from the shops, Nora discovers that she does not have her handbag

NORA: Gdje mi je torba? Mora da sam je ostavila na podu. Sjećam se da sam je metnula na pod s jednim paketom dok sam razgledala nakit koji je tamo bio izložen. Onda si me ti zvao i uzela sam paket. Zaboravila sam torbu.

ALAN: Je li bilo mnogo toga u njoj?

NORA: Nešto sitnija u novčaniku, ključevi, takve stvari. Hodi, Ranko, trčimo!

U dućanu su pitali prodavačicu je li slučajno netko našao i predao crnu žensku torbu.

PRODAVAČICA: Žao mi je, ali ništa nismo primili. Jeste li sigurni da ste je ostavili baš u ovom dućanu?

NORA: Jesam, i to prije možda desetak minuta.

PRODAVAČICA: Najbolje je da idete odmah na policiju prijaviti izgubljeno. Može biti da je torba nađena. Policijska postaja vam je iza prvog ugla desno.

POLICAJAC: Treba popuniti ovaj formular. Točno u koliko sati

- ste izgubili torbu? Jeste li primijetili još nekoga u dućanu u to doba?
- ALAN: Bila su dvojica mladića koji su kupovali žilete.
- POLICAJAC: Biste li ih mogli opisati?
- ALAN: Donekle. Jedan je bio plav, jedan crn s dugom kosom, može biti stranac. Nosili su traperice i jedan je bio u plavoj majici, drugi čini mi se u bijeloj košulji.
- POLICAJAC: A što ste imali u torbi, gospodo?
- NORA: Ništa od velike vrijednosti – nešto sitnog novca, ključeve, šminku, maramicu. Meni su najdragocjenije stvari u njoj fotografije naše djece i notes s adresama.
- POLICAJAC: Pričekajte ovdje jedan moment.
Policajac se vratio poslije nekoliko minuta, s najlon vrećicom u ruci.
Izглеda da imate sreće, gospodo. Dvoje djece je našlo ovu torbu na ulici prije nekoliko minuta i predalo je. Razumije se da nema novca, ali je sve ostalo unutra.

Vocabulary

desetak	roughly ten, ten or so	plav	abandon blue; blond (of hair)
dragocjen	precious	pod	floor, ground
dućan	shop	pod	floor, ground
izgubiti (pf.)	to lose	razgledavati	to examine
izgubljen (passive participle)	lost	(imp.)	
izložen	laid out, displayed	sitniš	change, loose coins
kosa	hair	šminka	make-up
maramica	handkerchief	stranac (G stranca)	foreigner
naden (passive participle of naći)	found	torba	handbag
nakit	jewellery	traperice (f. pl.)	jeans
notes	notebook	ustanoviti (f.)	to ascertain, establish
opisati (pf. opišem)	to describe	vrećica	bag
ostaviti (pf.)	to leave, to	najlon vrećica	plastic bag
		vrijednost (f.)	value

Language points

Aspect 2

We touched on the question of aspect in Lesson 2. Now we should consider it in more detail. You have come across many examples of the use of aspect in the lessons and the reading passages. When you have worked through this section, it would be advisable to look back over all the earlier material, observing the use of aspect.

Examples of aspect pairs:

Već šest mjeseci kupuju novu kuću; sad su je konačno kupili

They have been buying a new house for six months; now they've finally bought one

Pijete li uvijek hladan čaj? Svoj sam već odavno popila!

Do you always drink cold tea? I drank mine long ago!

Putuje se tri sata do granice; kad namjeravate oputovati?

One travels three hours to the border; when do you intend to leave?

Rado vam dajem te tri knjige, ali ovu ne bih nikome dala!

I gladly give you those three books, but I wouldn't give this one to anybody!

Ovo dijete strašno polako jede; bit će dovoljno ako pojede meso

This child is eating terribly slowly; it will be enough if he eats up the meat

Notice that in each pair the first verb describes an open-ended action, while the second denotes an action conceived as finite, whether in the past, present or future.

Exercise 2*

Translate the following pairs of sentences, selecting the verbs from the list below. (The imperfective is given first in each case.)

kasniti, zakasniti

silaziti, sići

pisati, napisati

sjećati se (+ G), sjetiti se;

čitati, pročitati

prolaziti, proći

kriti (krijem), sakriti

otvarati se, otvoriti se

jesti (jedem), pojesti

piti, popiti.

1 The train is thirty minutes late.

2 He was late for dinner again.

- 3 I'm coming down by lift, wait for me at the door.
- 4 Excuse me, are you going to get off at the next stop?
- 5 I wrote this letter last week and it's still on my desk!
- 6 She's in the living room writing to her brother.
- 7 I don't remember this crossroads, are you sure this is the right way?
- 8 At last he has remembered where he parked the car!
- 9 Your daughter reads very well. How old is she?
- 10 Leave¹ him to read his letter in peace.
- 11 My friend passes by that shop every day.
- 12 He passed by me in the street, but he didn't see me.
- 13 I'm sure she's hiding something from us.
- 14 My aunt hid her jewellery somewhere and now she can't find it.
- 15 The post office opens at 8 o'clock, you can buy the stamps then.
- 16 That new shop will open on the fifth of October.
- 17 We never eat before 8.30 in the evening, so come when you can.
- 18 Will he be able to eat this whole portion?
- 19 Drink up that red wine, then you can try this white.
- 20 We're drinking homemade brandy, will you (have some) too?

¹ pustiti . . . na miru

Dialogue 4

(Prijevod je na stranici 189. The translation is on page 189.)

Two friends are talking. One is being nosy and the other is out of sorts

- Tko ti je došao?
- Nitko, bio sam sam.
- Gdje je onaj mladić koji je bio s vama u subotu?
- Ne znam; otišao je nekamo.
- Čija je ta lijepa crna torba?
- Ne znam, mora da ju je netko zaboravio.
- Je li to kuća u kojoj si se rodio?
- Tako su mi rekli, ja se ne sjećam!
- Kakav je bio grad u kojem si odrastao?
- Malen i dosadan. Svatko mlad je htio pobjeći.
- Onda je valjda bio sve manji!
- Ne, u početku nam se činilo da grad nije ničiji, a polako je postajao naš.

- Viđaš li se s nekim starim prijateljima?
- Ni s kim.
- Kakvi su ti sada planovi?
- Nemam nikakvih planova.
- Zašto si tako neraspoložen?
- Ni zbog čega. Valjda zbog vremena!

Reading passage 1

Mr and Mrs Jović are shopping

Jovići su pošli u kupovinu. Gđa. Jović će ići najprije u pekarnu. Tamo će kupiti kruha i peciva. Kupit će pola raženog kruha, mali bijeli kruh i četiri peciva. Zatim će ići u mljekarnu. Cijela obitelj voli mlječne proizvode pa će kupiti jogurta, kiselog mlijeka, razne sireve i vrhnje za kolač koji će ispeći poslije podne. Zatim će poći u mesnicu. Tamo će kupiti jetrice, mljevene govedine, kobasica, slanine, nekoliko odrezaka, janječih kotleta, bubrega i šunke. U međuvremenu je njen muž pošao na tržnicu. On će tamo kupiti krumpira, luka, špinata, cvjetače, patlidžana i češnjak. Na kraju će se muž i žena naći u slastičarni gdje će se počastiti porcijom kremšnita i kapučinom.

pekarna 'baker's shop'; **pecivo** 'roll'; **raženi** 'rye'; **mljekarna** 'dairy'; **mlječni** (adj.) 'milk'; **proizvod** 'product'; **jogurt** 'yoghurt'; **kiselo mlijeko** 'sour milk' (thicker than **jogurt**); **sir** 'cheese'; **vrhnje** 'cream'; **ispeći** (pf.) 'to bake'; **mesnica** 'butcher'; **jetrica** 'liver'; **mljevena govedina** 'minced beef'; **kobasica** 'sausage'; **slanina** 'bacon'; **odrezak** 'cutlet'; **kotlet** 'chop'; **bubreg** 'kidney'; **šunka** 'ham'; **tržnica** 'market'; **krumpir** 'potatoes'; **luk** 'onions'; **špinat** 'spinach'; **cvjetača** 'cauliflower'; **patlidžan** 'aubergine'; **češnjak** 'garlic'; **slastičarna** 'confectioner'; **častiti nekoga nečime** 'to treat someone to something'; **kremšnita** 'cream cake'; **kapučino** 'cappuccino coffee'.

Exercise 3

Complete the dialogue (you are in a general grocer's shop)

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite, što želite?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo i crnog i bijelog kruha. Imamo i peciva.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite peciva. Želite li još nešto?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo ovaj ukusni bijeli sir.

VI: _____

- PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite dvadeset deka sira. Još nešto?
 VI: _____
 PRODAVAČICA: Imamo ove kobasice, salamu i pršut.
 VI: _____
 PRODAVAČICA: Ima grožđa, smokava, breskvi.
 VI: _____
 PRODAVAČICA: Evo vam grožđa. Još nešto?
 VI: _____
 PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite blok.¹ Platite na blagajni, molim.
- ¹ blok 'ticket, bill'

Dialogue 5

Ljubavna priča (17)

Mladen wants to know exactly what is going on

- Kad su sišli s autobusa, Mladen je uzeo Miru za ruku i zaustavio se pod svjetiljkom. Naslonio se o stup.
- Slušaj, Miro – reče – zašto si tako tajanstvena? Želim znati što se dešava. Zašto si rekla 'pogotovu ne sa mnom'? Ima tu nešto što ja ne razumijem.
 - Bolje ne pitati, Mladene. Bolje da se ne izražava riječima . . . Nešto mi je čudno otkad si ti među nama. Želim biti stalno kraj tebe. Sada, sama s tobom u ovoj noći čini mi se da sam u raju. Želim da ovaj trenutak potraje zauvijek. Ali čim to kažem znam da će sve odmah završiti.
 - Jesi li normalna? A Ivan? Dok sam gost u njegovoj kući? Kako ti nešto takvo može pasti na pamet!
 - Nemoj, Mladene, molim te! Kažem ti, znam da je sve gotovo čim se izrazi riječima. Ah, tako mi je bilo lijepo večeras, i tako je kratko trajalo!
 - Nemoj biti tragična. Nije se ništa desilo. Ionako se moram vratiti kući.
 - Kako se zove tvoja djevojka?
 - Što pitaš? Nije zbog nje.
 - Nego?
 - Hajde. Gdje ti je kuća? Kasno je već.
 - Dakle, gotovo je.
 - Nije ništa gotovo, ništa nije ni bilo. Hajde, uđi i mirno spavaj. Ujutro će ti se ovaj razgovor činiti smiješnim.
 - Laku noć. Daj da se rukujemo i ne ljuti se na mene

sići 'to get down, off'; **svjetiljka** 'light'; **stup** 'post'; **tajanstven** 'mysterious'; **izražavati** (imp.), **izraziti** (pf.) 'to express'; **čudno** 'strange'; **otkad** 'since'; **raj** 'paradise'; **trenutak** 'instant'; **zauvijek** 'forever'; **jesi li normalan?** 'are you crazy?'; **gost** 'guest'; **gotovo** 'finished'; **smiješan** 'funny'; **rukovati se** (imp. **rukujem se**) 'to shake hands'

Exercise 4*

Prevedite ove rečenice (Translate these sentences):

- 1 Someone has come to see you.
- 2 I don't want to see anyone!
- 3 Was anyone at home?
- 4 No, there was no one.¹
- 5 What were you talking about?
- 6 Who will they give the book to?
- 7 He was telling me about someone in the hotel.
- 8 Who were you with at the sea?
- 9 Whose is that beautiful house?
- 10 What shall I write with? I haven't got a pencil.²

¹ NB use **nije bilo** + G; ² **olovka**

Translation of Dialogue 4

Who came to see you?

No one, I was alone.

Where is the young man who was with you on Saturday?

I don't know; he went somewhere.

Whose is that nice black bag?

I don't know, someone must have forgotten it.

Is that the house in which you were born?

So I was told, I don't remember!

What's the town you grew up in like?

Small and boring. Everyone young wanted to run away.

Then it must have got smaller and smaller.

No, at the beginning it didn't seem that it was anybody's town, but it gradually became ours.

Do you see any old friends?

No one.

What are your plans now?

I haven't any plans.

Why are you in such a bad mood?

No reason. Probably because of the weather!

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (17)

Mark has decided to try to draw up a contract for the import of some fruit products and at the same time to use the firm's outlets for the export of fruit-based biscuits made in the United Kingdom

Danas sam bio na sastanku u prvoj tvornici koju smo posjetili. Njihovi su glavni proizvodi voćni sokovi i marmelade. Vjerujem da bi ti proizvodi mogli uspjeti na našem tržištu. Istovremeno, želio bih plasirati neke britanske proizvode, keks, naprimjer, čiji bi osnovni sastojak bio voće. Sada moram saznati od upravnog odbora sve detalje o uvjetima za uvoz proizvoda s inozemstva, o porezima i općenito o postupku oko toga.

voćni sok 'fruit juice'; **marmelada** 'jam'; **uspjeti** 'succeed'; **istovremeno** 'at the same time'; **pokušavati** 'to try'; **keks** 'biscuits'; **osnovan** 'basic'; **sastojak** 'component'; **saznati** 'to find out'; **upravni odbor** 'managing committee, board'; **uvjet** 'condition'; **porez** 'tax'; **općenito** 'generally'; **postupak** 'procedure, step'

18 Prometna nesreća

Road accident

In this lesson we will look at:

- the imperative
- negative imperatives
- adjective phrases expressed by verbs
- aspect 3
- parts of the body

Dialogue 1

Auto se sudario s kamionom

A car has run into a truck

On the road again, the Camerons come upon a traffic accident

Auto je uskoro bio popravljen i krenuli su ponovo na put. Vozili su se kroz lijepi, bregoviti pejzaž Gorskog kotara. Kod jednog zavoja, Alanu se učinilo da čuje jak tresak, kao da su se dva automobila sudarila. I Nora je nešto čula

NORA: Uspori vožnju, Alane, nešto se desilo ispred nas!

ALAN: Morat ću naglo kočiti. Pazite!

Iza krivine su ugledali strašan prizor: mali žuti auto se sudario s kamionom. Nesreća se tek desila i nisu skoro ništa vidjeli od guste prašine.

ALAN: Pričekajte ovdje!

Alan je iskočio iz auta i otrčao do žutog automobila.

ALAN: Je li tko povrijeđen?

- VOZAČ:** Pomozite mi otvoriti vrata, mislim da sam slomio ruku. Pogledajte što je s djecom otraga.
- DJEČJI GLAS:** Ništa nam nije, tata. Beba se uplašila i udarili smo se jako o sjedala, ali imat ćemo samo modrice. Ne brini!
- VOZAČ:** Hvala bogu, samo da ste mi živi!
Dok im je Alan pomagao prišao im je i šofer kamiona. Bio je potpuno blijed, uplašen i ljut.
- ŠOFER:** Kakav je to način vožnje! Prvo nauči voziti pa onda sjedni za volan! Nemoj pretjecati na zavojima, jesi li normalan!
- ALAN:** Smirite se, molim vas, svi ste doživjeli strašan sok. O tome ćete kasnije. Sad treba pozvati policiju. Ima li svjedoka? Ne dirajte u vozila! Nora, imaš li tople kave u termosu? Daj svima i sačekajte svi ovdje dok se ne vratim.

Vocabulary

blijed	pale	otraga	behind
bregovit	hilly	povrijeđen	hurt, wounded
čim	as soon as	prašina	dust
desiti se (pf.)	to happen	pretjecati (pf., pretječem)	to overtake
dirati (imp.)	to touch	slomiti (pf.)	to break
doživjeti (pf., doživim)	to experience	sudariti se (pf.)	to collide
gust	thick, dense	svjedok	witness
hvala bogu	thank God	trčati (imp. trčim)	to run
iskočiti (pf.)	to jump out	tresak (G treska)	bang
kamion	lorry	udariti se (pf.)	to knock into
ljut	angry	uplašiti se (pf.)	to be frightened
modrica	bruise	volan	steering wheel
način	way	vozilo	vehicle
nesreća	accident, misfortune	zavoj	bend, turn (in road)

Language points

Formation of the imperative

(a) Verbs whose first person singular in the present tense ends in **-am**, **-jem**, or **-jim** take the following endings:

	čekam	pijem	bojim se
2nd pers. sg. -j	čekaj!	pij!	boj se!
1st pers. pl. -jmo	čekajmo!	pijmo!	bojmo se!
2nd pers. pl. -jte	čekajte!	pijte!	bojte se!

Exercise 1

Give the imperative, all three persons, of the following verbs:

obećati	putovati (putujem)	kupovati (kupujem)
dati	pričati	očekivati (očekujem)
kriti (krijem)	stojati (stojim)	čuti (čujem)
zahvaljivati se (zahvaljujem se)		

(b) Most other verbs (with present tense ending in **-im** and **-em**) take the following endings:

	govorim	pišem
2nd pers. sg. -i	govori!	piši!
1st pers. pl. -imo	govorimo!	pišimo!
2nd pers. pl. -ite	govorite!	pišite!

Exercise 2

Give the imperative of the following verbs:

zaspati (zaspim)	šutjeti (šutim)	prati (perem)
posjetiti	donijeti (donesem)	bježati (bježim)
učiti	pušiti	ustati (ustanem)
staviti		

(c) With verbs whose infinitive ends in **-ći**, the formation of the imperative is not quite so straightforward: the endings are added not to the present tense stem, but to the infinitive stem. The original infinitive stem cannot easily be deduced and the imperatives should therefore be learned as they occur. A good dictionary will provide them. Examples:

reći (derived from **rek-ti**, $k + i = c$): **reci**, **recimo**, **recite**
pomoći (**pomog-ti**, $g + i = z$): **pomozi**, **pomozimo**, **pomozite**

NB **ići** and its derivatives form the imperative from the present tense stem:

(idem)	idi, idimo, idite
(dođem)	dođi, dođimo, dođite

Imperative of biti

budi	2nd pers. sg.
budimo	1st pers. pl.
budite	2nd pers. pl.
Budi razuman!	Be sensible!
Budimo ljudi!	Let's be decent human beings!
Budite ljubazni!	Be so kind (as to . . .)

Dialogue 2

Kod liječnika

At the doctor's

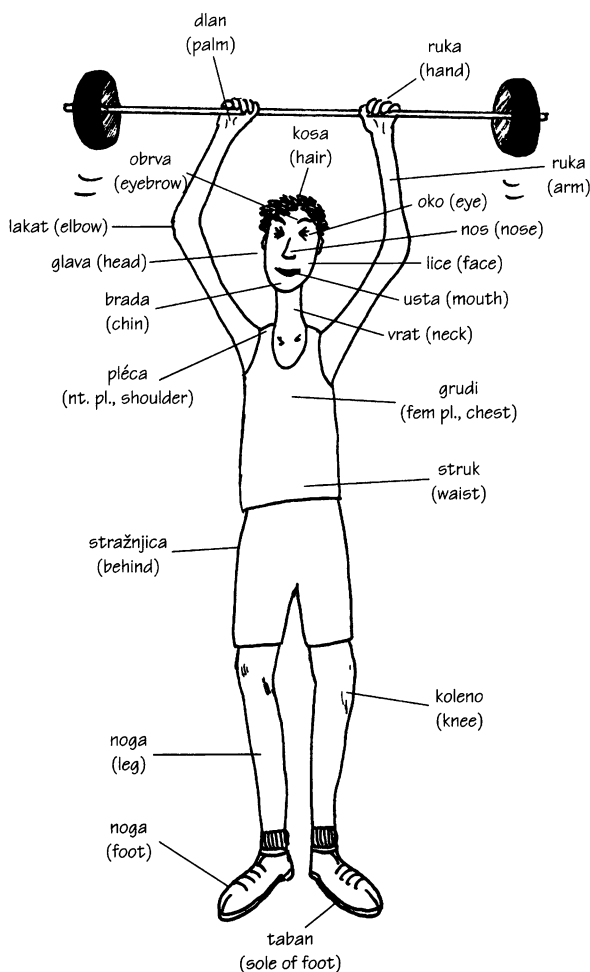
In Zadar, the Camerons easily found Ranko's grandmother's house

- BAKA: Jako je ljubazno od vas što ste Ranka doveli k meni. Puno ste nam pomogli.
- NORA: Kako vam je sada kći?
- BAKA: Hvala na pitanju. Sad joj je bolje. Morali su je operirati i sada mora ležati u bolnici jos tjedan dana. Poslije toga bi trebala otići na petnaest dana na oporavak.
- ALAN: Dugo to traje, dakle.
- BAKA: Da, ali, hvala Bogu, nije više opasno. Sada mora samo biti malo opreznija, i kažu liječnici da će uskoro moći živjeti potpuno normalnim životom.
- NORA: To nam je jako drago čuti.
- ALAN: Kad smo već kod zdravlja, mislim da bi bilo pametno da mi svratimo do liječnika dok smo u Zadru. Na početku našeg puta ovamo, povrijedio sam lakat i nikako ne ide na bolje. Boli me kad vozim i postaje dosta neugodno. Volio bih da ga liječnik pregleda.
- BAKA: To neće biti nikakav problem. Vjerujem da će moj liječnik biti večeras u ambulanti. Sad ću se javiti bolničarki da provjerim.

NORA: Bih li ja mogla poći u isto vrijeme? Mene glava prilično gadno zaboli ako sam predugo na suncu i ne znam koji bi mi lijek protiv glavobolje najviše pomogao.

BAKA: Vratit ću se odmah. Vi se odmorite od puta.

LJEČNIK: Dobar večer, gospodo Cameron. Pregledao sam vam supruga i dao sam mu mast za lakat. Treba ga dobro namazati kremom ujutru i prije spavanja. Počet će odmah djelovati. A vama treba neki prašak za glavobolju, je li tako? Dat ću vam nešto jako, a preporučujem vam da pijete što više mineralne vode i po mogućnosti izbjegavate najjače sunce.



Vocabulary

ambulanta	clinic	oporavak (G	recuperation
bolničarka	nurse	oporavka)	
boljeti (imp. bolim)	to hurt	oprezan	careful
djelovati (imp.	to act	(f. oprezna)	
djelujem)		planina	mountain
glava	head	poslužiti se (pf.)	to help oneself
glavobolja	headache	povrijediti (pf.)	to injure
izbjegavati (imp.)	to avoid	provjeriti (pf.)	to check
lakat (G lakta)	elbow	prašak	powder
liječnik	doctor	(G praška)	
lijek	medicine	sretan (f. sretna)	happy, fortunate
mast (f.)	ointment	svratiti (pf.)	to call on
opasan (f. opasna)	dangerous	zdravlje	health
operirati (imp.)	to operate (+ dir. obj.)		

Language points

Imperatives of other persons

These are formed by using the present tense and **da** or **neka**:

First person singular **da** + present:

Da vidim! Let me see!

Third person singular and plural **neka** + present:

Neka dođe! Let him come!

Neka čekaju! Let them wait!

Exercise 3*

Prevedite (Translate):

Let me hear! Let's go! Let me try (**probati**)! Let them sing! Let him sit down! Let them come in! Let's have a look! Let's drink this wine! Let her eat! Let them read a bit longer (**još malo**)!

Negative imperative

There are two methods of forming the negative imperative:

(a) **ne** + imperative:

Ne brini!	Don't worry
Ne dirajte!	Don't touch!

In these sentences, the *imperfective* aspect *must* be used. The effect of this method is sometimes rather abrupt.

(b)

nemoj (2nd pers. sg.)	nemoj to jesti!	Don't eat that!
nemojmo (1st pers. pl.)	nemojmo se brinuti!	Don't let's worry!
+ infinitive		
nemojte (2nd pers. pl.)	nemojte zakasniti!	Don't be late!

This method should be used for 'softer' prohibitions. Either the imperfective or the perfective aspect may be used as appropriate.

Exercise 4

Give the negative imperative of the following verbs:

zaboraviti (ti)	doći rano (vi)
zakasniti (mi)	misliti na to (vi)
piti tu vodu (ti)	

(c) First person singular and third persons simply insert the negative particle **ne** before the verb:

Neka ne zaboravi!	Let him not forget!
Neka ne čekaju!	Let them not wait!
Da ne zakasnim!	Let me not be late!

These may also be rendered by means of a request or command to a second person to intervene:

Nemoj da zaboravi!	Don't let him forget!
Nemojte da zakasnim!	Don't let me be late!

Some useful imperative phrases

Bježi(te)!	Go away!
Gubi(te)se!	Get lost! (use this with care!)
Pusti(te) me na miru!	Leave me alone!

Pazi(te)!	Watch out!
Stani(te)!	Stop!
Drž'te lopova!	Stop thief!
Dođi ovamo!	Come here!
Poljubi me!	Give me a kiss!

English adjective phrases expressed by a verb

Many expressions composed of 'to be' + adjective in English are rendered by a verb in Croatian and Serbian. These should be carefully noted as you come to them. Examples:

kasniti, zakasniti	to be late
ljutiti se, naljutiti se	to be angry
strpjati se (pf.)	to be patient
šutjeti (imp.)	to be quiet

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (18)

Mira telephones Ivan's flat

- Slijedećeg dana, Mira ustaje kasno. Mladen joj je stalno na pameti. Vrti se oko telefona. Na kraju izlazi u dugu šetnju s psom. Roditelji je sumnjivo gledaju.
- Što ti je, dušo? Da nisi bolesna?
 - Nisam. Ništa mi nije. Želim malo prošetati. Pustite me na miru. Kad se vrati poslije podne, odmah sjedne da telefonira Vesni.
 - Ah, Miro, gdje si bila? Ivan te je više puta tražio. Nije bilo nikoga kod tebe a nije znao gdje da te nađe.
 - Izašla sam. Je li ti Ivan nešto rekao?
 - U vezi s čime?
 - S Mladenom. Možda će uskoro otići.
 - Kako ti je bilo s njim? Dobro je ispalo što te je mogao otpratiti, zar ne?
 - Ne znam, možda baš nije bilo dobro.
 - Zašto?
 - Previše sam mu rekla. Zato tako brzo odlazi.
 - A možda nije, daj pozovi Ivana pa vidi.
 - Hoću. Svratit ću kasnije do tebe, može?
 - Dakako. Bok.

ustajati (imp.) 'to get up'; **vrtili se** (imp.) 'to turn, fidget'; **pas** 'dog'; **sine** lit. 'son' (V) but used affectionately for girls as well: 'dear'; **više puta** 'several times'; **tražiti** (imp.) 'to look for, seek'; **u vezi** (S + I) 'in connection with'; **ispasti** 'to turn out' (lit. 'to fall out', (pf.) **ispadnem**); **otpratiti** (pf.) 'to accompany, see home'; **daj** imperative of **dati**, 'go on, give him a ring'; **svratiti** (pf.) 'to call on'; **može** 'okay'; **dakako** 'of course'

Language points

Aspect 3

This is a large and complex subject and we can do no more than touch on one or two features in these lessons. We have already looked at many examples of the practice, we should now consider some features of the theory.

(a) In attempting to formulate a useful description of aspect it is best to start with the more clearly marked quality of perfective verbs. Their function is to express a single finite action which cannot be divided into phases:

Pojeo sam sladoled I ate up the ice-cream

This sentence does not refer to the beginning, middle or end of the action or the process of eating the ice-cream. It describes the totality of the action. Another example:

Došli smo da te vidimo We have come to see you

Again there is no reference here to the business of arriving, the speaker's concern is entirely with the fact of having arrived. This is the clearest use of the perfective.

The function of imperfective verbs is vaguer, they express an action which may have various different qualities – it may be

gradual: **Jedem sladoled i gledam more**
I am eating ice-cream and looking at the sea

repeated: **Dolazimo često na ovu plažu**
We often come to this beach

general: **Vole čitati stripove**
They like to read comic strips

We have described this function earlier as 'open-ended' and 'on-going'. All of these terms are impressionistic and vague. The closest we can get is perhaps to say that the imperfective describes an

action which is not conceived as an indivisible total. Another example of this 'open-endedness' is the use of the imperfective to describe an action which was not actually brought to completion:

Nekoliko dana se odlučivao da otputuje

He had been deciding to leave for several days

or He spent several days trying to make up his mind to leave

If this is contrasted with the perfective

Već se nekoliko puta odlučio da otputuje

He has already decided to leave several times

it should be clear that in the first instance the subject did not actually make the decision, in the second he did, but something evidently prevented him carrying it out. Again:

Cijeli dan je gledala izloge i kupovala nove haljine, ali nijedna joj nije odgovala

She spent the whole day looking in shop-windows and buying new dresses, but she did not like a single one

In this case she bought the dresses in her imagination only.

Tog dana je kupila tri nove haljine

That day she bought three new dresses

In this case it might have taken her all day, but she did buy the dresses in the end.

Since the perfective is conceived as an indivisible totality, it will be obvious that verbs such as **početi** (to begin), **produžiti** (to continue), **završiti** (to finish), etc., which refer specifically to the phases of a process (the beginning, middle and end, respectively), must be followed by the imperfective:

Počela sam učiti vaš jezik; tko zna hoću li ga ikad naučiti!

I have begun to study your language; who knows if I'll ever learn it!

Probudit ćemo susjede, ako produžimo ovako glasno pjevati!

We'll wake the neighbours, if we carry on singing so loudly!

Kad završite čitati, posudite mi tu knjigu, molim vas

When you've finished reading, please lend me that book

Language in action

Translation of 'it depends'

This is usually rendered by **ovisi o** + prepositional: **ovisi o vremenu** it depends on the weather. A useful way of expressing English 'it depends when', etc. is to add the conjunction **kako** to the adverb or pronoun you wish to qualify:

Volite li hladno pivo?

Do you like cold beer?

Kako kad

It depends, sometimes.

Voli li vaša obitelj lignje?

Does your family like squid?

Kako tko

It depends, some do.

Može li se kupati u toplesu na Jadranu?

Is there topless bathing on the Adriatic?

Kako gdje

It depends, in some places.

Exercise 5*

(a) Pitanja:

- 1 Kada su ponovo krenuli na put?
- 2 Kakav je bio pejzaž?
- 3 Kako se zove kraj kroz koji su se vozili?
- 4 Što je čuo Alan?
- 5 Što su ugledali iza zavoja?
- 6 Je li netko bio povrijeđen?
- 7 Što je bilo s djecom?
- 8 Kako je izgledao šofer kamiona?
- 9 Što je radio Alan?
- 10 Jeste li vi doživjeli prometnu nesreću?

(b) Prevedite:

It's difficult to be a child. Your parents, teachers, anyone (**bilo tko**) who is older, all keep telling you (**stalno govoriti**) what you have to do: 'Get up, get dressed, clean your teeth, make your bed, don't forget to comb your hair, don't be late for the bus, eat it all up, be home at seven o'clock, telephone as soon as you arrive, come here, don't be rude (**biti bezobrazan**), don't speak to me like that!' I wonder (**pitati se**), shall I talk to my children like that?

ustati (ustanem) 'to get up'; **obući se (obučem)** 'to dress'; **zub** 'tooth'; **namjestiti krevet** 'to make one's bed'; **očesljati kosu** 'to comb hair'; **dijete** (nt.) 'child'; **djeca** (collec., f. sg) 'children'

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (18)

Mark has a meeting with representatives of Head Office to discuss his proposals

Jasna je rano došla po mene da me odvede u glavni ured. Ja sam se svečano obukao za taj važni sastanak. Stigli smo na vrijeme. Dočekali su nas srdačno i uveli u glavnu konferencijsku salu. Čak su pozvali predstavnika gospodarske komore koji je došao na kraju da mi objasni načela izvoznog i uvoznog sustava u Hrvatskoj. Ranije sam razgovarao o svim detaljima posla i predstavnici raznih odjeljaka tvrtke su pripremili ugovore i razne druge potrebne papire.

svečan 'solemn, formal, festive'; **obući se** 'to dress'; **sala** 'hall'; **načelo** 'principle'; **izvozni** 'export'; **uvozni** 'import'; **sustav** 'system'; **ugovor** 'contract'

19 Razgovor o svakodnevnom životu

Conversation about everyday life

In this lesson we will look at:

- the conditional: 'I would', etc.
- conditional clauses
- hypotheses
- reflexive phrases

Dialogue 1

Razgovoramo o vremenu

We're discussing the weather

Towards the end of the day, Alan and Nora go for a walk with Ranko. They discuss the Dalmatian climate

Potkraj dana su pošli u šetnju da potraže sobu. Alan i Nora su se divili lijepoj plavoj boji mora.

ALAN: More izgleda tako privlačno! Da smo samo ranije stigli, mogli bismo se odmah kupati.

NORA: Ništa za to, ima vremena! Ako brzo nađemo sobu barem ćemo moći sjesti i nešto popiti pored mora.

ALAN: Ali pogledajte kako je nebo oblačno. Bojim se da bi sutra mogla padati kiša. Što misliš, mali?

RANKO: Možda, ali ako pada neće dugo.

NORA: Je li ljeti uvijek lijepo ovdje na moru?

RANKO: Ima ponekad bure. To obično traje dan dva pa je onda opet lijepo.

- ALAN: Ako je vrijeme jako toplo, ima valjda ponekad oluje s grmljavinom?
- RANKO: Ima. Ja to volim!
- NORA: A kakvo je vrijeme ovdje zimi?
- RANKO: Vjetar puše. Može biti kišovito. Ali nije nikad jako hladno.
- ALAN: Čuo sam da je boravak u hotelu na Hvaru zimi besplatan ako temperatura padne ispod stanovite granice.
- NORA: Plaća se pola cijene ako je hladno. a besplatno je tek ako pada snijeg.
- ALAN: Što se zaista ne bi moglo desiti!
- NORA: Mislim da bi meni najviše odgovarao boravak na Jadranu ili u jesen ili u proljeće. Onda je klima valjda umjerena: nije ni prehladno a ni pretoplo. Vrućina mi škodi.
- ALAN: Doći ćemo mi jedne godine u proljeće, recimo u svibnju. A sad nemojmo više pričati, gledajmo ovaj prekrasni zalazak sunca!

Vocabulary

besplatan (f. besplatna)	free	padati (imp.); pf. pasti, padnem	to fall
boja	colour	privlačan (f. privlačna)	attractive
bura	north-east wind, storm	proljeće	spring
cijena	price	puhati (imp. pušem)	to blow
diviti se	to admire, wonder at	snijeg	snow
granica	limit	stanovit	certain
grmljavina	thunder	stupanj (G stupnja)	degree
jesen (f.)	autumn	škoditi (imp.)	to harm (+ D)
kiša	rain	svibanj	May
kišovit	rainy	umjeren	moderate
kupati se (imp.)	to bathe	vani	outside
ljeti	in summer	vjetar (G vjetra)	wind
oblak	cloud	zaista	really
odgovarati (imp.)	to suit	zalazak sunca	sunset
oluja	storm		

Language points

Formation of the conditional

This mood expresses such statements as 'I would like to live here', 'That really could not happen'. In Croatian and Serbian it is a compound tense composed of the active present participle (the same as that used for the perfect) and the aorist of **biti**.

Generally speaking, the auxiliary is placed in the same position as other auxiliary (enclitic) verbs (**sam**, etc. and **ću**, etc.). There are therefore two possible positions for the participle, depending on whether or not the pronoun, or other preceding word, is used.

citati

<i>Pronoun</i>	<i>Auxiliary</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Auxiliary</i>
ja	bih	čitao/čitala		čitao/čitala	bih
ti	bi	čitao/čitala		čitao/čitala	bi
on	bi	čitao		čitao	bi
ona	bi	čitala		čitala	bi
ono	bi	čitalo		čitalo	bi
mi	bismo	čitali		čitali	bismo
vi	biste	čitali		čitali	biste
oni	bi	čitali		čitali	bi
one	bi	čitale		čitale	bi
ona	bi	čitala		čitala	bi

Negative. The negative particle **ne** is placed immediately before the auxiliary: **Ja ne bih čitao, Ne bih čitao.**

Ne bih nikad od njega kupio auto

I'd never buy a car from him

Ne bi slušala

She wouldn't listen

Ne biste stigli na vrijeme

You wouldn't get there in time

Interrogative

<i>Question marker</i>	<i>Auxiliary</i>	<i>Participle</i>	
------------------------	------------------	-------------------	--

Zašto	biste (vi)	stajali?	Why should you stand?
--------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

Koliko	bih (ja)	platila?	How much would I pay?
---------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------------

Gdje	bi (oni)	ručali?	Where would they have lunch?
-------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------------------

Kada	bi (ona)	došla?	When would she come?
Da li	bismo	zakasnili?	Would we be late?

But we have seen that Croatian prefers the construction verb + **li** to **da li** + verb. The following structure for the interrogative conditional is then preferred in Croatian:

Bih li (ja) došao?	Would I come?
Bi li (ti) pjevala?	Would you sing?
Bi li (on) vozio auto?	Would he drive the car?
Biste li (vi) mogli pomoći oko kupovine?	Would you be able to help with the shopping?

Such questions may then be answered by the auxiliary on its own:

Biste li putovali s nama? Bismo.	Would you travel with us? Yes
Bi li on mogao ući? Bi.	Could he come in? Yes
Bi li ti pušila? Bih!	Would you smoke? Yes!

Exercise 1*

Prevedite slijedeće rečenice:

- 1 I would not want to go out today.
- 2 Would you like to travel with them?
- 3 Would we be able to help?
- 4 I would invite her, but she wouldn't come.
- 5 It would be better to have lunch here.
- 6 She would not want to sit with him.
- 7 Would you write to me?
- 8 Would he believe that?
- 9 He would not recognise¹ the children.
- 10 Could they come tomorrow?

¹ prepoznati

Formation of the conditional (contd)

As a rule, English 'would' may be translated by **bih**, etc. In addition to conditionals, it is used to express:

habitual actions

Pročitao bi po pet knjiga svakog tjedna
He would read some five books each week

'softened' requests, statements and commands

Biste li otvorili prozor?

Would you open the window?

Nešto bih vas pitao

I would (like to) ask you something

Ne bih to preporučila

I wouldn't recommend that

Ne bih to radio

I wouldn't do that

Conditional clauses 

In Croatian and Serbian you must distinguish between *real* conditions and *hypotheses*. In real conditions 'if' is translated by **ako** and the tenses are the same as in English:

Ako nađemo smještaj, prenoćit ćemo ovdje

If we find accommodation, we'll spend the night here

Ako je lijepo vrijeme, uvijek večeraju vani

If it's nice weather, they always have dinner outside

Ako je on to rekao, možemo mu vjerovati

If he said that, we can believe him

Dialogue 2 **Razgovor o svakodnevnom životu****Conversation about everyday life**

The Camerons arrive in Dubrovnik and meet up with their friends Nikola and Zdenka, whom they had got to know the previous year in England

ALAN: Eto, mislim da smo vam ispričali sve u vezi s putovanjem ovamo. Uglavnom je bilo jako udobno.

NIKOLA: Za mene je na odmoru uvijek glavno da izidem iz kolotečine da ne moram ustati u određeno vrijeme, da mogu raditi što želim i kada želim . . .

NORA: Imaš li jako strogo radno vrijeme?

NIKOLA: Prilično. Radnim danom ustajem rano, u pola šest, a

- onda mi postaje teško promijeniti naviku.
- ALAN: Tako rano ti počinje posao?
- NIKOLA: U uredu sam u sedam. Čovjek se navikne. Može biti čak i ugodno, pogotovu ljeti kad ustaješ sa zorom i pticama. A još je ugodnije što posao završava rano popodne. Tada si slobodan da na miru ručaš, da odspavaš, da radiš što ti je volja.
- NORA: Idu li djeca u školu tako rano ujutru?
- NIKOLA: Većina naših škola radi na smjenu. To znači da dijete ide u školu jedan tjedan prije, a jedan poslije podne. To je ponekad komplicirano ako je oboje roditelja zaposleno i ako ta obitelj nema 'baka-servis'!
- ZDENKA: Meni je pak najdraže na odmoru to što ne moram misliti na kupovinu i kuhanje, niti na račune – za plin, za struju, za telefon.
- ALAN: Jesu li te stvari kod vas skupe?
- ZDENKA: Pa znaš kako je, sve ti se čini mnogo kad ti je plaća mala.

Vocabulary

drugačiji	different		
ispričati (pf.)	to relate	promijeniti (pf.)	to change
kolotečina	routine	ptica	bird
na miru	in peace	račun	bill, account
navika	habit	smjena	shift
navikavati se (imp.)	to get used	strog	strict, severe
odmor	rest	struja	current, electricity
odspavati (pf.)	to take a nap	svakodnevni	everyday
plaća	pay, salary	većina	majority
plin	gas	volja	will
pogotovu	especially	zaposlen	employed
postajati (imp.)	to become	zora	dawn
prethodan (f. prethodna)	former, preceding		

Language points

Hypotheses

There are two kinds of hypothetical statement:

(a) *Unreal conditions*. These are statements in which the condition has not been or will not be met, such as:

If you were here, you would see him.

(But you are not, so you cannot.)

If it had not been raining, we would have gone out.

(But it was, so we did not.)

In such sentences in Croatian and Serbian, the verb in the main clause is in the conditional, as you would expect. What is different is the 'if' clause.

The two sentences above could also be expressed:

Were you here, . . .

Had it not been raining, . . .

In this case the unreality of the propositions is more obvious. When you need to translate an English 'if' clause, then, you should see whether the 'if' can be omitted in this way. This does not always work, but it is a useful rough guide.

The subordinate clause in such cases is introduced by the conjunction **da** + appropriate tense:

Da si ovdje, vidio bi ga.

Da nije padala kiša, izašli bismo.

(b) There is also a category of potentially realisable conditions, e.g. 'If he were to come on time, we would be able to see him.' The subordinate clause in such sentences in Croatian and Serbian is introduced by **kad** or **ako** + *conditional*: **Kad bi došao na vrijeme, mogli bismo ga vidjeti**. Also:

Ako bi se javila, rekao bih da te nema

If she were to phone, I'd say you weren't in

Exercise 2*

Prevedite slijedeće rečenice:

- 1 If you want to see them, come straight away.
- 2 If you knew what she told me, you would not laugh.

- 3 If we go by this road, we'll reach the coast sooner.
- 4 If you wanted to see him, why didn't you say so?
- 5 If I had read the letter, I would have known you were coming.
- 6 You would have liked the film if you had seen it.
- 7 Would they have travelled with us if we had gone by train?
- 8 If she had arrived on time, she would have met our son.
- 9 Please tell me if the plane is late.
- 10 If you are hungry, you can have dinner with us.

Language in action

Reflexive passive

One of the main methods of conveying passivity in Croatian and Serbian is the use of the reflexive form of verbs which are otherwise transitive. The object of the transitive verb becomes the subject of its reflexive form:

Pije li se pivo kod vas?

Is beer drunk in your country?

Ovdje se ne govori engleski

English is not spoken here

Gdje se kupuju karte?

Where does one buy tickets? (Where are tickets bought?)

Kako se kaže . . . ?

How do you say . . . ? (How is it said?)

Ovdje se primaju stranke

Clients are received here

Exercise 3*

Translate, using the reflexive passive:

- 1 I hear that very good cheese is made¹ here.
- 2 Can Radio Zagreb be heard in London?
- 3 His books are read throughout² the world.
- 4 The cathedral can be clearly seen on the hill.
- 5 Luggage is not accepted at left-luggage³ after 10p.m.

¹ praviti 'to make'; ² širom + G; ³ garderoba

Reflexive verbs to express 'I feel like'

Notice this use of the reflexive:

Meni se jede nešto s roštilja	I feel like eating . . .
Spava mu se	He's feeling like sleeping / sleepy
Ne radi nam se	We don't feel like working

Expression of 'whoever', 'whatever', etc.

The addition of the particle **bilo** to various pronouns and adverbs conveys English '-ever': **bilo tko** 'whoever'; **bilo što** 'whatever'; **bilo gdje** 'wherever'; **bilo kad** 'whenever'.

Donesi mi bilo kakvu knjigu
Bring me any kind of book whatever

Uradi to na bilo koji način
Do that in any way whatever

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (19)

Mira finally telephones Ivan's house

- Halo, molim vas, je li Ivan doma?
- Je, samo trenutak. Tko ga treba?
- Mira.
- Ah, Miro. Traži te cijeli dan. Kako si, dušo?
- Hvala, teta Dragice, dobro sam. Žao mi je što me je Ivan tako dugo tražio.
- Evo, sad ću ga pozvati. Bit će mu milo.
- Zdravo, Miro.
- Zdravo, Ivane. Kako ti je bilo na utakmici?
- Dobro. A kako tebi na tajnom sastanku?
- Kakav tajni sastanak? Kod Vesne misliš?
- Nego što?
- Pa, Ivane, ništa nije bilo tajno, zašto ne bi Vesna mogla k sebi pozvati koga hoće?
- Ne treba tu mnogo objašnjavati. Ti dobro znaš o čemu se radi. Mladen odlazi već večeras. I to zbog tebe. Nadam se da si ponosna!

- Zašto bih bila ponosna? Oh, Ivane, daj da se vidimo da ti kažem!
- Nema smisla. Ja ti ne bih imao što reći. Zato sam te tražio, tek da ti kažem da me više ne trebaš čekati. Ajde, zbogom.
- Ivane . . . Ivane . . . !?

tajni 'secret'; **sastanak** 'meeting'; **ponosan** 'proud'; **nema smisla** 'there's no point'

Exercise 4*

Prijevod. Translate the following conversation into Croatian or Serbian:

A: What's the weather like today? It looks nice.

B: Why do you ask?

A: I thought we could go out somewhere, if it's not raining.

B: It's cold, I would prefer¹ to stay at home.

A: You can't stay inside all day!

B: Why not?

A: Come on, the sun's shining.² We could go to Sljeme.

B: It's always windy on hills.

A: Rubbish!³

B: You go then.

A: It would be nicer if we were together.

B: I agree. How would it be if we walked together to the City cafe?

¹ use **više voljeti**; ² **sjati**; ³ **gluposti!**

Language points

Aspect 4

Features of English as a guide to choosing aspect:

1 (a) The meaning of a given verb: the nature of some types of action suggests a particular aspect.

Imperfective: verbs such as: 'to rest', 'to sleep', 'to listen', 'to watch', 'to study', 'to walk', 'to talk', etc.

Perfective: 'to say', 'to learn' (as opposed to 'to study'), 'to switch on/off', 'to glance', 'to catch sight of', etc.

(b) Verbs expressing sense impressions such as 'to see' and 'to hear' may be followed by either an infinitive or a participle in

English. We have seen that for the participle construction Croatian and Serbian requires **kako** + *present*:

Čuo sam ga kako prilazi
I heard him approaching

Vidjeli su ih kako se igraju loptom
They saw them playing ball

These constructions require the *imperfective*.

But English infinitive constructions tend to indicate the *perfective*:

Čini mi se da sam čuo kako je ušao
I think I heard him come in

Vidio je kako je predsjednik predao dokumente
He saw the president hand over the documents

(c) Progressive tenses in English *must* be translated by the *imperfective* in Croatian and Serbian:

I am sitting by the window thinking
Sjedim kraj prozora i razmišljam

He was reading a newspaper
Čitao je novine

She will be waiting on the platform
Čekat će na peronu

NB This does *not* mean that simple tenses in English denote the perfective!

2 Adverbs and conjunctions as determining factors

(a) Adverbs. Some adverbs clearly indicate one or other aspect:

Imperfective: ‘constantly’ (**neprestano**); ‘all the time’ (**stalno**); ‘regularly’ (**redovito**), ‘a long time’ (**dugo**), ‘all day long’ (**cijeli dan**), ‘some time’ (**neko vrijeme**), etc.

Perfective: ‘at last’ (**konačno**); ‘all at once’ (**odjednom**); ‘suddenly’ (**iznenada**); ‘immediately’ (**odmah**); ‘abruptly’ (**naglo**), etc.

(Of course some flexibility will be required according to context: e.g. ‘At last they are on their way’ obviously refers to an ‘on-going’ action.)

(b) Conjunctions. Some may denote either aspect, depending on context:

You ought to nibble something *when* you drink strong drinks
Morate nešto grickati kad pijete žestoka pica (imp.)

They took off their shoes *when* they entered the mosque
Izuli su cipele kad su ušli u džamiju (pf.)

Others indicate the imperfective:

She knitted this jumper *while* she was (lying) in hospital
Ispela je ovaj džemper dok je ležala u bolnici

As we came I noticed your new car
Dok smo dolazili primijetila sam tvoj novi auto

Others the perfective:

I shall telephone *as soon as* I arrive
Telefonirat ću čim stignem

(c) Phrases introduced by 'for' and 'in'. Time phrases introduced by 'for' tend to lay emphasis on the *process* of the action:

We wrote letters *for* three hours
Pisali smo pisma tri sata

The imperfective is used to express this emphasis.

On the other hand, phrases introduced by 'in' emphasise the totality of the action:

We wrote the letters *in* three hours
Napisali smo pisma za tri sata

Exercise 5*

Translate the following passage, selecting from the aspect pairs below. They are given in the order in which they occur in the text and the first verb in each pair is the imperfective.

The last passengers got out¹ in the suburbs and Tina was left² alone in the compartment. She got up³ and went over⁴ to the window. Her blue eyes watched⁵ the neon advertisements which reminded⁶ her of her home town. She had stood⁷ at that window a few hours earlier and said goodbye to⁸ (*greeted*) Zagreb. The main station had been the only acquaintance who saw her off.⁹

With a sigh she put on¹⁰ her fur coat, took¹¹ her bag and went out¹² into the corridor. The passengers were waving¹³ and greeting¹⁴ relations and acquaintances. A strange feeling of

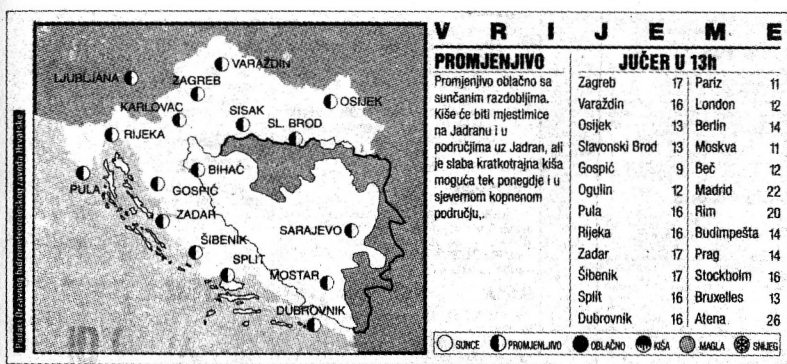
loneliness overwhelmed¹⁵ Tina. The train stopped¹⁶ and she jumped¹⁷ onto the platform among the first.

Vocabulary

'suburbs' **predgrađe** (sg.); 'neon' **neonski**; 'advertisement' **reklama**; 'home town' **rodni grad**; 'acquaintance' **znanac**; 'sigh' **uzdah**; 'fur coat' **bunda**; 'feeling' **osjećaj**; 'loneliness' **osamljenost**; 'platform' **peron**

Verb list

¹silaziti, sići; ²ostajati, ostati; ³ustajati, ustati; ⁴prilaziti, prići; ⁵promatrati, promotriti; ⁶podsjecati, podsjetiti; ⁷stajati, stati; ⁸pozdravljati, pozdraviti; ⁹ispraćati, ispratiti; ¹⁰oblačiti, obući (obučem, obukao); ¹¹uzimati, uzeti; ¹²izlaziti, izaći; ¹³mahati, mahnuti; ¹⁴pozdravljati, pozdraviti; ¹⁵obuzimati, obuzeti; ¹⁶zaustavljati se, zaustaviti se; ¹⁷skakati (skačem), skočiti



Exercise 6

Look at the weather map and write a forecast using the vocabulary provided.

Reading passage 📖

Priča našeg vremena (19)

The firm's accountant, responsible for all taxation matters, attends the final, formal meeting

Na samom kraju sastanka, kad je sve bilo dogovoreno, došao je računovođa koji je odgovoran za sve što se odnosi na plaćanje poreza. Meni je to bilo prilično složeno ali su svi bili dobro raspoloženi i strpljivi i sve su mi polako objasnili. Glavno je da se porez na dodanu vrijednost plaća na uvoznu robu a ne na prerađevinu za izvoz. Na kraju su došli

upravitelji tvrtke da bismo svečano potpisali ugovore. Onda sam ja održao kratak govor (na hrvatskom!) u kojem sam rekao koliko sam zadovoljan svojim poslom ovdje i kako očekujem da ćemo uspješno surađivati. Sad jedva čekam da se vratim kući i počnem sa zajedničkim poslom!

dogovoriti 'to agree'; **računovođa** 'accountant'; **dobro raspoložen** 'in a good mood'; **strpljiv** 'patient'; **porez na dodanu vrijednost** 'VAT'; **roba** 'goods'; **preradevina** 'processed goods'; **potpisati** 'to sign'; **održati govor** 'to make a speech'; **očekivati** 'to expect'; **surađivati** 'to co-operate, work together'

20 Kraj

The end

In this lesson we will look at:

- participles. 'being', 'having been', etc
- verbal nouns

Reading passage 1

Pismo

Letter

Draga Marija,

Pišem ovo pismo, sjedeći na plaži, naslonjena na jastuk u jako udobnom sjedalju. Baš mi je lijepo! Alan se igra loptom s jednim malim dječakom koji je s nama putovao ovamo. Sutra ga moramo odvesti baki u Zadar. Bit će nam žao, toliko smo se već navikli na njega. Donekle nam popunjava prazninu koju ostavlja odsutnost naše vlastite djece!

Pitamo se kako si ti i tvoji? Jedva čekamo da vas vidimo. Spremamo se u Dubrovnik krajem ovog tjedna i nadamo se da ćemo vas tamo zateći. Ako budete imali vremena, bili bismo jako zahvalni kada biste se mogli raspitati za privatni smještaj. Samo za Alana i mene. Ako se bude slučajno desilo da malo vodimo sa sobom, lako ćemo moći i njega nekako smjestiti. Imamo gumeni madrac koji se za čas može napumpati ili napuhati. Kako se zvao onaj

lijepi veliki hotel preko puta Lokruma s pogledom na dubrovačku luku? Je li 'Excelsior'? Čini mi se da jest. Jedne godine sam bila našla divnu sobu u tom predjelu ali na žalost mi se kći razboljela pa sam se morala vratiti u Englesku . . .

Do sada smo putovali bez većih uzbuđenja. Jednom nam se auto pokvario ali smo ga brzo popravili. Inače smo svuda našli ugodna mjesta za noćenje i sve u svemu bilo nam je izvanredno lijepo. Sada želimo još dobro razgledati Zadar, pa provesti dan dva u Splitu. Prijatelji u Zagrebu nam rekoše da tamo svakako pogledamo neku opernu predstavu. Vidjet ćemo ima li karata. Baš bih to voljela, iako Alan nije bogzna kakav ljubitelj opere! Njega će vjerojatno više zanimati muzeji i rimski ostaci grada.

Pretoplo mi je pa se moram osvježiti u moru. Upravo gledam kako Alan i mali Ranko skaču i prskaju se vodom. Neodoljivo!

Puno pozdravi sve svoje, do skorog viđenja,
voli te tvoja Nora

Vocabulary

bogzna	(lit. 'God knows')	naslonjen	to lean
čas	(here) moment	(past part.	
donekle.	up to a point	of nasloniti	
gumen	rubber	se , pf.)	
jastuk	cushion, pillow	navikao	accustomed
jedva	hardly	(f. navikla)	
jedva čekam	I can't wait	neodoljiv	irresistible
kakav	much of	odsutnost (f.)	absence
kći	daughter	ostatak (G	remainder
luka	harbour	ostatka)	
madrac	mattress	osvježiti se (pf.)	to refresh oneself
napuhati (pf.)	to blow up	popunjavati	to fill
napumpati (pf.)	to pump up	(imp.)	

pozdraviti (pf.)	to greet	sjedalo	seat
praznina	emptiness,	svuda	everywhere
gapprskati (imp.)	to splash, spray	preko puta (+ G)	opposite
raspĳitati se (pf.)	to make enquiries	upravo	just
rimski	Roman	vlastiti	one's own
skakati (imp., skaćem)	to jump, to dive	zahvalan (f. zahvalna)	grateful
		zanimati (imp.)	to interest
		zateći (pf., zateknem)	to find, to catch

Language points

Participles (*verbal adverbs or gerunds*)

There are four participles in Croatian and Serbian, of which two are verbal adjectives and two verbal adverbs.

We have already met the active past participle (**bio**, **imao**, etc.), and know that this is one of the adjectival forms. We shall come to the other adjective form, the passive past participle, later – it is not in very common use.

Verbal adverbs or gerunds. There are two, one denoting simultaneous action and the other past action: (i) 'seeing' (ii) 'having seen'.

Present gerund

This is formed by adding the suffix **-ći** to the third person plural of the present tense of the *imperfective*:

(oni) govore	govoreći	speaking
(oni) pišu	pišući	writing
(oni) imaju	imajući	having

The gerund is infrequently used, even in the written language, except in certain situations.

The present gerund of **biti** is based on the perfective third person plural **budu = budući**. This is used frequently as a conjunction with **da**:

Budući da smo u Hrvatskoj . . .
Since we are in Croatia . . .

Budući da je lijepo vrijeme . . .
Since it is nice weather . . .

The gerund is, strictly speaking, indeclinable (like all adverbs). But certain gerunds are becoming increasingly used as adjectives:

budući	Da te upoznam sa svojim <i>budućim</i> mužem! Let me introduce you to my future husband!
iduci	Vratit će se sigurno <i>iduce</i> godine ako mogu They will certainly come back next year if they can
slijedeći	<i>Slijedećeg</i> dana smo se rano probudili We woke up early the following day
tekući (teći 'to flow')	Koliko imaš na <i>tekućem</i> računu? How much have you got in your current account?

Past gerund

This is formed by adding the suffix **-v**, **-vši** (after a vowel) or **-avši** (after a consonant) to the infinitive stem:

usta-ti	<i>ustavši</i>	rek-ti (reći)	<i>rekavši</i>
vidje-ti	<i>vidjevši</i>	mog-ti (moći)	<i>mogavši</i>
sjeti-ti se	<i>sjetivši se</i>		

Again, the past gerund is rarely used: it is more common to find a whole clause where such a participle is used in English

Having started the book I'd like to finish it
Kad sam počeo čitati knjigu, htio bih je završiti
or **Budući da sam počeo . . .**
or **Počeo sam, pa bih htio . . .**

As in the case of the present gerund, we find that the past gerund of **biti**, **bivši**, is in common use as an adjective:

Da te upoznam sa svojom bivšom suprugom!
 Let me introduce you to my former wife!

Ta kuća pripada bivšem predsjedniku
 That house belongs to the former president

NB The common English construction with the active present participle ending in '-ing' can cause problems in translating, e.g. 'I heard the birds singing'. Such sentences should be rendered by **kako** + present (imperfective) tense: **Čuo sam kako ptice pjevaju.**

Exercise 1*

Prevedite slijedeće rečenice:

- 1 I think I saw them coming.
- 2 Have you heard her singing?
- 3 We found them playing in the park.¹
- 4 He didn't notice me going out.
- 5 She stood by the window and watched the people passing by.²

¹park; ²prolaziti

Participles (contd)**Passive past participle, verbal nouns**

Passive past participle – this is the other verbal adjective. Passive participles are formed from the infinitive stem of either aspect. Most verbs with infinitive ending in **-ati** have passive participle in **-an**:

čitati	čitan, čitana, čitano
pozvati	pozvan, pozvana, pozvano

Most verbs with infinitive ending in **-iti** or **-eti/jeti** have **-jen** (see Appendix, section 6 for rules of effect of **j** on preceding consonant):

vidjeti	viđen, viđena, viđeno
učiniti	učinjen, učinjena, učinjeno

Verbs with infinitive ending in **-nuti** have **-nut**:

prekinuti	prekinut
------------------	-----------------

Verbs with infinitive ending in **-eti** and present **-mem** or **-nem** have **-et**:

zauzeti (zauzmem)	zauzet
prokleti (prokunem)	proklet

These are the most common regular patterns. Examples:

Je li ovaj kruh dobro ispečen?

Is this bread well baked?

Stol je prostrt, kruh je narezan, vino je ohlađeno, riža je kuhana. Dođite ručati!

The table is laid, the bread is cut, the wine chilled, the rice boiled. Come and have lunch!

Verbal nouns. Many of these passive participles may be made into nouns by the addition of the suffix **-je**:

osloboditi	oslobođen	oslobođenje	
to liberate	liberated	liberation	
čitati	čitan	čitanje	reading
promatrati	promatran	promatranje	observation, watching
učiti	učen	učenje	learning

Intransitive verbs cannot have a passive participle; in such cases the endings **-anje** or **-enje** are added to the infinitive stem.

kupati se	kupanje	bathing
sjediti	sjedenje	sitting
putovati	putovanje	travelling, journey

Text

Ljubavna priča (kraj)

A week later, a letter arrives for Mira. She does not recognise the handwriting

Tjedan dana poslije razgovora s Ivanom, stiglo je za Miru pismo. Nije prepoznala rukopis. Žurno je otvorila oмотnicu i vidjela što je potajno čekala: pisao je Mladen.

Draga moja luda mala Miru,

Ivanoj dajem da ti ipak dugujem pismo i nekakvo objašnjenje. Bojim se da si ostala sama jer se Ivan strašno naljutio. Nisam mu ništa rekao osim da mi je bilo neugodno one večeri kod Vesne jer mi se činilo da se sa mnom manipulira. Onda sam spomenuo da sam te obavijestio doma. Valjda je nešto naslutio i postavio je neka izravna pitanja, na koja sam mu morao odgovoriti otvoreno kao prijatelj. Za ovo kratko vrijeme koje sam proveo u Zagrebu Ivan mi je postao blizak. Bratić mi je i stalo mi je do njega.

Ima još jedan razlog zbog kojega sam morao odmah napustiti Zagreb. Možda si već pogodila. Ustanovio sam da nisam ni ja ravnodušan prema tebi. Tvoje društvo mi je bilo neobično privlačno i počeo sam se malo kajati. Situacija nemoguća! A ipak zaslužuješ da to znaš. Jednog dana ćemo se svi moći vidjeti i opet se družiti, siguran sam. Moći ćemo se slatko smijati ludostima svoje mladosti. Za sada je bolje da se stane na kraj nečemu što nije ni počelo a što je svima nama moglo nanijeti štetu i bol. Budi sretna i strpljiva. Ne ljuti se na Ivana ni na mene. Sve će to proći.

Volim te, da znaš,
Mladen

Mira je pritisnula pismo na grudi i briznula u neutješni plač. Negdje duboko u sebi divila se Mladenovoj razumnoj odlučnosti ali u isto vrijeme joj se činilo nelogično što je ona, pored ta dva draga mladića, morala ostati sama.

prepoznati (pf.) 'to recognise'; **rukopis** 'handwriting'; **potajno** 'secretly'; **lud** 'crazy'; **dojam** 'impression'; **dugovati** (imp.) 'to owe'; **objašnjenje** 'explanation'; **bojati se** (bojim se, imp.) 'to be afraid'; **naljutiti se** (pf.) 'to be angry'; **spomenuti** (pf.) 'to mention'; **naslutiti** (pf.) 'to sense'; **postaviti pitanja** 'to put questions'; **neposredan** 'direct'; **razlog** 'reason'; **napustiti** (pf.) 'leave, abandon'; **pogoditi** (pf.) 'to guess'; **ustanoviti** (pf.) 'to establish, realize'; **ravnodušan** 'indifferent'; **zasluživati** (imp.) 'to deserve'; **družiti se** (imp.) 'to be friends'; **smijati se** (imp.) 'to laugh'; **ludost** 'madness'; **stati nečemu na kraj** 'to put an end to something'; **šteta** 'harm'; **bol** 'pain'; **strpljiv** 'patient'; **pritisnuti** (pf.) 'to press'; **grudi** (f pl.) 'breast'; **briznuti u plač** 'burst into tears'; **neutješan** 'inconsolable'

Language points

Word order 5

This is another area which can cause some difficulties for English-speakers. Some of these are basic to correct grammar, and some are subtler and largely stylistic. It is important to be aware of differences in word order between the two languages, both in composing correct and informative utterances in Croatian and Serbian and in translating from Croatian and Serbian into English.

Difficulties arise for two main reasons: (i) the presence of *enclitics*, for which there is no equivalent in English; (ii) the fact that English-speakers are used to a system in which word order indicates syntactic relations between the main elements of a sentence and only secondary elements (adverbs, preposition phrases) normally vary in position.

We shall look at these two areas of difficulty in turn.

Enclitics

We are already quite familiar with the basic rules governing the placing of enclitics and with the order in which they come when there are several of them. Where there is a group of enclitics they must all come together in that order:

interrogative particle **li**; verbal D A/G (of pronouns); **se**; **je**

The enclitic group is normally placed after the first element in the sentence or clause. This may be *a single word*:

Ivan mi je kupio kartu

Ivan bought me a ticket

NB **ne** + verb count as a single word:

Ona je zauzeta i ne može nas vidjeti

She is busy and she can't see us

Remember also that the linking conjunctions **i**, **a** and **ni** do not count as separate words in this context.

The first element may also be a phrase:

Jedan moj prijatelj mi je rekao da imate stan

A friend of mine told me you had a flat

Prošlog tjedna su nas pozvali na večeru*Last week they invited us to dinner*

In general, it is considered 'literary' or 'pedantic' to break up a phrase by putting the enclitics strictly after the first word. But notice the following interrogative words which do not form a phrase with the words they govern:

Koliko je sati?

What's the time?

Koliko ima godina?

How old is he/she?

Koje je boje tvoj novi auto?

What colour is your new car?

The conjunctions **ali**, **ili** and **jer** may be treated as the first word in the sentence or simply as linking words.

But some other conjunctions never count as the first word because they are followed by a pause, sometimes an actual comma:

Dakle nisam mu ga dao*So I didn't give it to him***Prema tome, javit će ti se sutra***Consequently he'll ring you tomorrow*

The most important thing to remember is that if a sentence or clause starts with a 'clause introducer', the enclitics must follow immediately after it. Consequently when you are composing a clause in Croatian or Serbian and come to such a word you must immediately work out which enclitics will be required later in the sentence and put them in. All the other elements in the sentence must then be fitted in. This necessity is the cause of frequent mistakes for English-speakers.

Such 'clause introducers' are **da**, **što**, **ako**, relatives and interrogatives.

Rekao je da će mi ga odmah vratiti*He said (that) he would give it straight back to me***Drago mi je što ste nam opet došli***I'm glad (that) you've come to us again***Prije nego što smo mu objasnili o čemu se radi, izašao je***Before we had explained to him what it was about, he went out*

Ako mi je vrati, dat ću ti knjigu

If he returns it to me, I'll give you the book

To je prijatelj koji mi je pričao o tebi

That's the friend *who* told me about you

To je prijatelj o kojemu sam ti pričala

That's the friend I told you about (*about whom* I told you)

Više ne znam ni kako se zvao

I no longer even know *what* he was called

Moram znati kad ćeš mi ga dati

I must know *when* you're going to give it to me

Care must be taken with subordinate clauses which behave like independent units. Enclitics from the main clause are not usually placed immediately after them and never inside them. This presents no difficulty if the main clause comes first:

Jasno mi je da si ga tajno vidala

I realise that you've been seeing him secretly

When the subordinate clause comes first the enclitics from the main clause follow the first word in the main clause: **Da si ga tajno vidala, jasno mi je**. This construction can be awkward, so often the pronoun 'to' is added to take over the role of the subordinate clause: **Da si ga tajno vidala, to mi je jasno**. Such constructions are far more frequent in Croatian and Serbian than their equivalent would be in English.

Infinitives can behave either as separate clauses or as parts of the main clause:

Mira te želi vidjeti

Mira wants to see you

If the main clause contains enclitics, they are all put together:

Mira te je željela vidjeti

Mira wanted to see you

Pokušat ću ga sutra naći

I shall try to find him tomorrow

Zašto se ne bi Bogdan mogao javiti danas?

Why shouldn't Bogdan ring today?

Exercise 2

Write a description of two friends of yours who have quite different tastes and habits.

Word order 6

Apart from the strict rules governing the placing of enclitics, word order in Croatian and Serbian is relatively free. The existence of cases makes it possible to place subject verb and object in any order:

Dala sam nosaču prtljagu

I gave the porter the luggage

Prtljagu sam dala nosaču

Nosaču sam dala prtljagu

All of these sentences are equally acceptable. Their order is not random, however: each sentence conveys a slightly different emphasis. It is important to distinguish first of all between basic, grammatical word order in Croatian and Serbian and order which is determined by context and which conveys meaning in itself.

Basic word order, independent of context, is on the whole similar to English: subject – verb – object.

In word order conditioned by context, however, there are various differences. These seem to stem from the fact that in Croatian and Serbian as a rule the less informative part of the sentence comes before the more informative part. (This is related to the question of enclitics, in that stress tends to build up over the sentence with increasing emphasis on the end. Consequently the enclitics must be placed as far as possible from this inherent emphasis.) Examples:

Prošlog tjedna nismo uopće izašli

We didn't go out at all last week

This order emphasises the fact that the speaker stayed at home.

Nismo uopće izašli prošlog tjedna: this order, on the other hand, stresses the fact that the speaker usually goes out a lot in any given week but did not this particular week. This means that in Croatian and Serbian if the object is of less informational value (perhaps because it has already been mentioned) it may be placed first in the sentence:

Tu kuću je sagradio poznati arhitekt

A famous architect built that house

It is possible for English to preserve the Croatian and Serbian order by using a passive construction: 'This house was built by a famous architect.' This is a very important device which works both ways: Croatian and Serbian generally avoids the passive, but English passive constructions can usually be rendered by placing the object first in the sentence, as in the example above.

The principle is, then, that new information or the more informative part of the sentence tends to follow other elements in the sentence:

Ovi stanovi su sagrađeni prije deset godina. U stanovima žive uglavnom mladi ljudi.

These flats were built ten years ago. On the whole young people live in the flats.

Adverbial 'scene-setting' phrases

In a neutral sentence in Croatian and Serbian, these phrases are placed at the beginning of the sentence: their function is to 'set the scene' for the main information. In English, on the other hand, they are normally at the end:

Na plaži je bilo mnogo meduza

There were a lot of jelly-fish *on the beach*

Po povratku smo bili jako zauzeti

We were very busy *after we got back*

Za vrijeme odmora na otoku, nismo mnogo čitali

We didn't read much *during our holiday on the island*

In general, in Croatian and Serbian adverbs which qualify or quantify the action of the verb precede it:

Jako lijepo svira klavir

She plays the piano very well

Prebrzo govore. Ništa ne razumijem!

They speak too fast. I don't understand a thing!

So, English-speakers should take care over the placing of adverbs and adverbial phrases: make a note of instances you come across in your reading.

Adverbs and pronouns with low informational value

Usually, objects, pronouns and adverbs which carry little information precede the verb. To put them after the verb would give them special emphasis, altering the meaning of the sentence:

Daj da ti nešto pokažem

Let me show you *something*

Daj da ti pokažem nešto.

Let me show you *at least something*, even if you don't want to see everything

Negdje smo ga vidjeli

We saw him *somewhere*

Vidjeli smo ga negdje

We saw him *somewhere*, I'm just trying to think where it was

Such 'low prominence' words include: **nešto, negdje, nekako, nekud, tu, ovdje, jučer, danas, sutra, ovo, to, sad, često, stalno.**

Phrases with fixed word order

There are a few more or less fixed patterns which should be learned:

Vocative phrases. In these the neutral order of adjective–noun is often reversed:

Budalo jedna!

You fool!

Bože dragi!

Dear God!

Mili moj!

My darling!

Zlato moje!

My treasure (gold)!

Possessive phrases:

taj moj prijatelj

that friend of mine

ovi njegovi prijatelji

these friends of his

jedan moj znanac

an acquaintance of mine

dva naša znanca

two acquaintances of ours

Exercise 3*

Translate the following passages, paying particular attention to word order.

1 Novels about Tarzan have been translated into some eighty languages up to now, and printed in altogether 70 million copies. Two hundred million people have seen films about him, and thousands of newspapers publish cartoons about him every day. What is the reason for Tarzan's popularity?

Although he is quite old-fashioned in comparison with the heroes of contemporary adventure stories, he has succeeded for seventy years already in attracting an audience to himself because he is a symbol in all the media of an increasingly frequent rejection of civilisation and return to nature.

2 The Zagreb soloists were founded by Antonio Janigro. They have been well known to the public for years already for the quality of their interpretations. Quite a lot is known about their successes as well, but not how they actually work, what kind of problems they encounter.

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (20)

At the end of Mark's meeting with the Head Office representatives, he went with them to hear a speech by the president of the Chamber of Commerce to a group of foreign businessmen who were in Croatia at the time

Zbog svog zemljopisnog položaja Hrvatska je zanimljiva za poslovnu suradnju. Nakon neuspjeha komunističkog upravljanja i uvođenja političkog pluralizma, u Hrvatskoj se trenutno zacrtava pravni sustav koji će pomoći usmjerenje k tržišnom gospodarstvu. Skladno s ovim promjenama, Hrvatska gospodarska komora se ustrojila kao suvremena, tržišna i stručna ustanova koja odgovara potrebama poslovanja kako u Hrvatskoj, tako i u inozemstvu. Plan za sadašnju Hrvatsku gospodarsku komoru zacrtan je prema zapadnoeuropskim komorama uz nekoliko naših posebnih, tradicionalnih primjesa. Komora se sastoji od dvadesetak područnih komora i od središnje komore u Zagrebu, glavnom gradu Hrvatske. Glavni su ciljevi komore: promidžba hrvatskih poslovnih interesa u zemlji i u inozemstvu, razmjena poslovnih informacija među mogućim partnerima pomoću djelotvorne baze podataka te daljnje poslovno obrazovanje. Tijekom proteklih godina,

hrvatsko gospodarstvo doživjelo je velike promjene. Osnovane su tisuće novih privatnih poduzeća. U Hrvatskoj danas postoji preko 60,000 aktivnih gospodarskih jedinica. Zbog obilja svojih prirodnih i ljudskih bogatstva i dugotrajne poslovne tradicije Hrvatska je idealni poslovni partner za budućnost.

Reading passage 3

You have now covered all the main points of the grammar and some essential vocabulary. You need to consolidate your knowledge and expand your vocabulary by further reading. You should now be able to read newspapers with relative ease, as well as other more complex texts with the help of a dictionary. The following passage describes some of the main features of the various countries of the Serbian, Croatian and Bosnian linguistic area. The text has been adapted from a description of four of the six republics that constituted the country known from 1918 to 1991 as Yugoslavia. (For the first ten years of its existence, it was known as 'The Kingdom of the Serbs, Croats and Slovenes'. The other two republics, Slovenia and Macedonia, have their own, closely related, but distinct, South Slav languages: Slovene and Macedonian respectively.) The violent collapse of the country, the misery and destruction of war have led to a tendency to deny these seventy years of shared history, but some knowledge of the relationships between the various territories is essential to an understanding of their present character and future development.

Glavne karakteristike hrvatskog odnosno srpskog govornog područja do 1991. godine

1 Hrvatska

Hrvatska se najvećim dijelom pruža uz obalu Jadranskog mora, i u njoj živi oko 4,430.000 stanovnika. Glavni i najveći grad je Zagreb s oko 800,000 stanovnika, važan centar kulturnih, znanstvenih i umjetničkih djelatnosti, a također i važno industrijsko i trgovačko središte. U njemu se nalazi nuklearni institut 'Ruđer Bošković' nazvan po svjetski poznatom fizičaru sedamnaestog vijeka iz Dubrovnika, Hrvatska akademija znanosti i umjetnosti, Leksikografski zavod, velika privredna organizacija 'Rade Končar', uglavnom

proizvođač 'bijeleg tehnike', čuveni Zagrebački velesajam, itd.

Hrvatska ima nekoliko vrlo jakih industrijskih središta, kao što su Osijek, najveći grad u plodnoj Slavoniji, Sisak, s poznatom željezarnom, Rijeka na sjeveru Kvarnerskog zaljeva s velikom lukom, Pula i Split sa svojim brodogradilištima.

Hrvatska je poznata i po svojim velikim turističkim mogućnostima. Ovu je slavu Hrvatskoj donijela zaista prekrasna obala Jadranskog mora i brojni otoci, među kojima su po svojoj ljepoti i turističkim mogućnostima najpoznatiji Krk, Rab, Brač, Hvar, Korčula i Mljet. Ova je obala izuzetno bogata povijesnim i kulturnim spomenicima: nižu se, na primjer, slavna katedrala u Šibeniku, rimska palača u Splitu, prekrasni gradovi niz cijelu obalu, na čelu kojih se naravno nalazi drevni Dubrovnik, nekadašnja Ragusa, grad povijesti, sunca, divnih palača, tvrđava i pjaca. S njegovih zidina može se čitati ponosna povijest ovoga srednjovjekovnog grada-republike, grada koji je bio most između Zapada i Istoka, i koji se ponosi umjetničkom, trgovačkom i pomorskom tradicijom.

2 Bosna i Hercegovina

Ovo je područje posebno zanimljivo po svom kulturno-povijesnom naslijeđu i arhitekturi. Stari gradovi kao Mostar i Sarajevo, na primjer, zadržavaju tragove islamsko-orijentalne civilizacije: svojim vitkim i bijelim minaretima, džamije privlače pažnju turista. U Bosni se nalazi i čuveni Višegrad, čiji je most postao tema poznatog romana 'Na Drini ćuprija' jugoslavenskog nobelovca Ive Andrića. Hercegovina je također poznata po brojnim starim nadgrobničkim spomenicima nazvanim stećci.

U BiH, koja je zauzimala središnji dio bivše Jugoslavije, živjelo je oko 4 milijuna stanovnika; njezin teritorij je obuhvaćao 20 posto cjelokupnog jugoslavenskog teritorija. Glavni grad je Sarajevo, koji se smjestio pod slikovitim Trebevićem. U kulturnom životu, ovaj grad je postao poznat po festivalu eksperimentalnih scena i po odličnim muzičkim sastavima, pop-grupama.

Ovo područje poznato je po šumskom i rudnom bogatstvu – ugljenu, željezu, boksitu i kamenjoj soli. Osim toga, ono ima i golem vodeni potencijal, koji služi za proizvodnju električne energije. Hercegovina je poznata kao proizvođač dobrog duhana i vina.

3 Srbija

Po površini i stanovništvu Srbija je bila najveća republika, jer je zauzimala 34,5 posto jugoslavenskog teritorija. U njoj su se nalazile i dvije autonomne pokrajine – Kosovo i Metohija, i Vojvodina. U Srbiji živi preko 8,500.000 stanovnika, od kojih na Kosovu 1,5, (većinom Albanaca) a u Vojvodini preko 2 milijuna (među kojima su zastupljene različite narodnosti; mađarska je najbrojnija). Glavni gradovi su Beograd, Priština i Novi Sad.

Na ovom velikom prostoru ima mnogo rudnog bogatstva, najviše ugljena, bakra, olova i cinka, magnezita, zatim prirodnog plina i nafte. Na Dunavu, u Đerdapskoj klisuri, izgrađena je velika hidro-elektrana i to u suradnji i dogovoru sa susjednom Rumunjskom. Vojvodina, dio velike i plodne Panonske nizine, poznati je proizvođač žita i hrane. Na Kosovu također postoje povoljni uvjeti za poljoprivredu; u toj pokrajini ima mnogo dobrih vinograda, posebno oko Prizrena. Voćarstvo je razvijeno u cijeloj Srbiji, a naročito uzgoj šljiva. Srbija je poznata po brojnim manastirima, spomenicima srednjovjekovne kulture, ukrašenim zanimljivim i vrijednim freskama i ikonama.

4 Crna Gora

Crna Gora je bila najmanja republika Jugoslavije, i po površini i po broju stanovnika. Nalazi se na granici s Albanijom i jednim dijelom je smještena uz jadransku obalu. Zbog svoje zanimljive povijesti i sačuvane narodne tradicije, uvijek je izazivala interes stranaca, te je o njoj napisano nekoliko knjiga na različitim jezicima.

Na Obodu, kraj Cetinja radila je već 1493. jedna od prvih tiskara među Južnim Slavenima. Crna Gora je planinska zemlja, o čemu govori i njen naziv. U Crnoj Gori živi oko 600,000 stanovnika, ali priličan broj Crnogoraca živi u susjednoj Srbiji, osobito u Beogradu. Glavni grad je Podgorica (ranije Titograd). U ovom kraju se nalazi veliko jezero – Skadarsko, bogato ribom. Na sjeveru, pod obroncima Orjena i Lovćena, nalazi se divan zaljev – Boka Kotorska, čijoj se ljepoti divio i irski pisac G. B. Shaw, a pjesnik A. Šantić nazvao je ovaj zaljev ‘nevjestom Jadrana’. Zato se turizmu posvjećuje sve veća pažnja i novi hoteli niču na sve strane. Na jugu se nalazi stari gusarski grad Ulcinj s na kilometre dugim, ljekovitim pješčanim plažama.

Grammar summary

1 Noun declensions

Masculine

			<i>Singular</i>		
N	prozor	prijatelj	stol	muž	čitalac
G	prozora	prijatelja	stola	muža	čitaoca
D	prozoru	prijatelju	stolu	mužu	čitaocu
A	prozor	prijatelja	stol	muža	čitaoca
V	prozore	prijatelju	stole	mužu	čitaocu
P	prozoru	prijatelju	stolu	mužu	čitaocu
I	prozorom	prijateljem	stolom	mužem	čitaocem

			<i>Plural</i>		
N	prozori	prijatelji	stolovi	muževi	čitaoci
G	prozora	prijatelja	stolova	muževa	čitalaca
D	prozorima	prijateljima	stolovima	muževima	čitaocima
A	prozore	prijatelje	stolove	muževe	čitaoce
V	prozori	prijatelji	stolovi	muževi	čitaoci
P	prozorima	prijateljima	stolovima	muževima	čitaocima
I	prozorima	prijateljima	stolovima	muževima	čitaocima

NB 'soft' consonants: **c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š, ž**

- 1 Masculine nouns with 'soft' consonant ending preceded by **e** usually have instrumental singular **-om**: **Beč** (Vienna), **Bečom**; **padež** (case), **padežom**. Masculine nouns ending in **-c** usually have instrumental **-om**; but if **-c** follows mobile **a**, then instrumental always ends **-em**: **stranac** (foreigner), **strancem**; **novac** (money), **novcem**; **otac**, **ocem**
- 2 Masculine nouns ending in **-anin** (e.g. **građanin**, **Dubrovčanin**) have plural **-ani**: **građani**, etc.

Neuter

			<i>Singular</i>	
N	selo	more	vrijeme ¹	dijete ²
G	sela	mora	vremena	djeteta
D	selu	moru	vremenu	djetetu
A	selo	more	vrijeme	dijete
V	selo	more	vrijeme	dijete
P	selu	moru	vremenu	djetetu
I	selom	morem	vremenom	djetetom

			<i>Plural</i>	
N	sela	mora	vremena	djeca
G	sela	mora	vremena	djece
D	selima	morima	vremenima	djeci
A	sela	mora	vremena	djecu
V	sela	mora	vremena	djeco
P	selima	morima	vremenima	djeci
I	selima	morima	vremenima	djecom

¹ Most neuter nouns ending in **-me** follow this pattern. ² Some neuter nouns have the infix **-et-**. These are usually the words for young animals and they have an irregular plural (usually a feminine singular collective form, e.g. **tele** 'calf' has G sg. **teleta** and N. pl. **telad**).

Feminine

			<i>Singular</i>	
N	žena	stvar	kći	
A	ženu	stvar	kćer	
G	žene	stvari	kćeri	
D	ženi	stvari	kćeri	
V	ženo	stvari	kćeri	
P	ženi	stvari	kćeri	
I	ženom	stvari	kćeri	

			<i>Plural</i>	
N	žene	stvari	kćeri	
A	žene	stvari	kćeri	
G	žena	stvari	kćeri	
D	ženama	stvarima	kćerima	
V	žene	stvari	kćeri	
P	ženama	stvarima	kćerima	
I	ženama	stvarima	kćerima	

Feminine nouns ending in **-a** preceded by two or more consonants may have genitive plural in **i**: **torba**, G. pl. **torbi** (see also section 5.)

2 Adjective declensions

	<i>Masculine (Definite)</i>	<i>Singular Neuter</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
N	mladi	mlado	mlada
G	mladog(a)	mladog(a)	mlade
D	mladom(e) mladom(u)	mladom(e) mladom(u)	mladoj
A (inanimate) (animate)	mladi mladog(a)	mlado	mladu
V	mladi	mlado	mlada
P	mladom(e) mladom(u)	mladom(e) mladom(u)	mladoj
I	mladim	mladim	mladom
		<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
N	mladi	mlada	mlade
G	mladih	mladih	mladih
D	mladim(a)	mladim(a)	mladim(a)
A	mlade	mlada	mlade
V	mladi	mlada	mlade
P	mladim(a)	mladim(a)	mladim(a)
I	mladim(a)	mladim(a)	mladim(a)
	Indefinite (sg. only)		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	
N	mlad	mlado	
G	mlada	mlada	
D	mladu	mladu	
A (inanimate) (animate)	mlad/ mlada	mlado	
P	mladu	mladu	
I	mladim	mladim	

	'Soft' stem	Definite (sg.)
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
N	svježi	svježe
G	svježeg(a)	svježeg(a)
D	svježi	svježem
A (inanimate)	svježeg(a)	svježe
(animate)	svježi	
P	svježim(u)	svježim(u)
I	svježem(u)	svježem(u)

Alternative longer form. The shorter forms are normally used. There are three situations in which the longer forms should be used:

- 1 If the adjective is used on its own, without a noun: **Uzmi kruha, ako ima svježega.**
- 2 If several adjectives qualify the same noun, the first will usually be long: **Sjećam se tvoga simpatičnog strica**
- 3 If the adjective follows the noun it qualifies: **Ni imena svoga se nije više sjećao.**

The last example is not so much a grammatical rule as a stylistic preference, and it is on the whole for stylistic purposes that the longer forms are used.

3 Personal pronoun declensions

Singular

N ja	ti	on	ono	ona	
G mene, me	tebe, te	njega, ga	njega, ga	nje, je	sebe, se
D meni, mi	tebi, ti	njemu, mu	njemu, mu	njoj, joj	sebi, si
A mene, me	tebe, te	njega, ga ¹	njega, ga ¹	nju, ju, je	sebe, se
P meni	tebi	njemu	njemu	njoj	sebi
I mnom(e)	tobom	njim(e)	njim(e)	njom(e)	sobom

Plural

N mi	vi	oni	ona	one
G nas	vas	njih, ih	njih, ih	njih, ih
D nama, nam	vama, vam	njima, im	njima, im	njima, im
A nas	vas	njih, ih	njih, ih	njih, ih
P nama	vama	njima	njima	njima
I nama	vama	njima	njima	njima

¹The alternative short form **nj** may be used after a preposition which carries stress. You may come across examples, particularly in literary texts.

4 Verb types

Verbs are divided into several classes, with subdivisions according to their infinitive stem. There are three main sets of endings, however, as seen in Lesson 2:

	<i>I</i>	<i>II</i>	<i>III</i>
1st pers. sg.	-am	-im	-em
3rd pers. pl.	-aju	-e	-u

It is important to be aware that some forms of the verb are based on the infinitive stem, and some on the present tense stem. In many verbs these are the same, but in others they are not and the present tense stem of such verbs must therefore be learned. A good dictionary will supply the first person of the present tense whenever this cannot be deduced from the infinitive. Here are a few guidelines.

Infinitives ending in -ti. The infinitive and present tense stems of these verbs are usually the same:

čitati (to read) **čitam**

Usually the vowel preceding **-ti** will indicate which set of endings the verb takes, but not always:

1 Verbs ending in **-ati** take type I endings, unless:

(a) the last consonant of the infinitive stem is **č, ž** or (sometimes) **j**, then type II:

trčati (to run)	trčim
držati (to hold)	držim
stajati (to stand)	stojim
bojati se (to be afraid)	bojim se

(b) the stem ends in **-nj, lj** or (sometimes) **j**, then type III:

počinjati (to begin)	počinjem
ostajati (to remain)	ostajem

NB Also, in some instances when the last consonant of the infinitive stem is **s, z, t, c, k** or **ks**, the present tense stem may be different and type III endings will be added:

pisati (to write)	pišem
kazati (to say)	kažem

2 Verbs ending in **-iti** always take type II endings:

govoriti (to speak) **govorim**

3 Verbs ending in **-uti** always take type III:

krenuti (to move) **krenem**

4 Verbs ending in **-eti** may take type II or III (in this case the present tense stem is usually different: **uzeti** (to take), **uzmem**). The present tense of each of these must therefore be learned.

Infinitives ending in -ivati, -ovati. Again, the infinitive and present tense stems are usually the same, but in these cases the syllable **-iv, -ov** is replaced by **-uj-** before the type III endings:

stanovati (to reside) **stanujem**
pokazivati (to show) **pokazujem**

Infinitives ending in -avati

In these verbs **-j** is added to the first **a** of the suffix, before type III endings:

davati (to give) **dajem**
prodavati (to sell) **prodajem**

NB Care should be taken with these verbs as sometimes the syllable **-av-** is part of the stem and retained in the present tense:

pokušavati (to try) **pokušavam**

Infinitives ending in -ći. Verbs ending in **-ći** *never* have the same infinitive and present tense stem:

reći (to say) **reknem**
pomoći (to help) **pomognem**
ići (to go) **idem**
doći (to come) **dođem**

Infinitives ending in -sti

(a) vowel + **-sti**. The present tense stem will be different (usually **t, d, p** or **b**):

jesti (to eat) **jedem**

(b) consonant + **-sti**. The infinitive and present stems may be the same, but if the final consonant is unvoiced it may change to its voiced equivalent (see page 241):

iscrpsti (to exhaust)**iscrpem**

but

grepsti (to scratch)**grebem**

5 Mobile a

Nouns

(a) Masculine nouns ending in two consonants other than **st**, **zd**, **št** and **žd** have the letter **a** inserted between these consonants in the nominative singular and genitive plural:

	<i>G sg.</i>	<i>G pl.</i>	
momak	momka	momaka	(lad)
pas	psa	pasa	(dog)
borac	borca	boraca	(warrior, soldier)

(b) Masculine nouns ending in **l** which has become **o** in the nominative:

ugao	ugla	uglova	(corner)
posao	posla	poslova	(work, job)

(c) Neuter nouns with their stem ending in a consonant cluster may also have mobile **a** in the genitive plural:

pismo	pisma	pisama	(letter)
društvo	društva	društava	(society)

(d) Feminine nouns ending in **-a** preceded by two consonants may take mobile **a** in the genitive plural:

djevojka		djevojaka	(girl)
sestra		sestara	(sister)

but the alternative genitive plural ending in **-i** has replaced this in many such feminine nouns:

legenda		legendi	(legend)
----------------	--	----------------	----------

Adjectives

Adjectives with their stem ending in two consonants other than **st**, **zd**, **št** and **žd** may take mobile **a** to form the indefinite masculine singular:

<i>Definite</i>	<i>Indefinite</i>	
dobri	dobar	(good)
kratki	kratak	(short)
radosni	radostan	(joyous)
topli	topao¹	(warm)

¹ all adjectives with final **l** derived from **o**, including active past participles, are in this category.

The **a** in the following adjectives is also mobile: **sav**, **kakav**, **takav**, **nikakav**, etc.

6 Consonant changes

We have seen that the combination of certain consonants and vowels leads to changes:

(a)

k + i -ci	(momak, momci)
g + i -zi	(kovčeg, kovcezi)
h + i -si	(juha, u jusi)

These changes occur in masculine plural and feminine dative/prepositional of nouns; and the imperative (**pomoći – pomog-ti – pomozí, pomozite!**). *NB* this rule does not apply to adjectives. Exceptions include proper names and feminine nouns with stem ending in **-tk** (**tetka**), **-čk** (**mačka**) and **-zg** (**tezga**)

(b)

k + e -če	(momak, momče!)
g + e -že	(Bog, Bože!)
h + e -še	(duh, duše!)

These changes occur in the vocative singular of masculine nouns; and in the present tense of verbs with infinitive in **-ći** derived from **k + t**, **g + t** and **h + t**:

peći (pek-ti)	pečem	(to roast)
strići (strig-ti)	strižem	(to shear)
vrći (vrh-ti)	vršem	(to thresh)

(c) consonant + **j**. These changes occur mostly in the comparison of adjectives:

p + j plj	skup – skuplji	(expensive)
b + j blj	riba – riblji	(fish)
v + j vlj	krv – krvlju	(blood)
m + j mlj	razum – razumljiv	(reason – comprehensible)
t + j ć	smrt – smrću	(death)
d + j đ	mlad – mlađi	(young)
s + j š	visok – viši	(tall)
z + j ž	brz – brži	(fast)
k + j č	jak – jači	(strong)
h + j š	tih – tiši	(quiet)
g + j ž	drag – draži	(dear)
st + j šć	čest – češći	(frequent)
zd+ j žđ	grozd – grožđe	(grapes)

Assimilation. As the spelling of Croatian and Serbian is phonetic, any consonant assimilations that occur are recorded in writing:

(a) alternation of voiced/unvoiced consonants: the following consonants are 'paired':

unvoiced:	č	ć	(f)	k	p	s	š	t
voiced:	dž	đ	(v)	g	b	z	ž	d

If one of these consonants is placed immediately next to one of the others it may be replaced by its pair so that they are both either voiced or unvoiced, according to the last consonant in the group:

sladak	slatko	(sweet)
težak	teško	(difficult)
Englez	engleski	

(b) alternation of s and z with š and ž

When s, z are placed next to a palatal or palatalised consonant, they change to their palatalised equivalent š and ž:

misлити (to think)	mišljenje (opinion)
paziti (to take care)	pažnja (attention care)

7 Formation of questions

In Lesson 1 you met all the commonest ways of asking questions. There are three more:

(a) Questions may be formed by the addition of **zar ne?** 'isn't it

so?’ at the end of the sentence. This usually implies the expectation of a positive answer:

Vaš stric je bogat, zar ne? Your uncle is rich, isn't he?

(b) The words **je li?** or **je li da?** may also be added, but in this case the expectation may be slightly different.

Vaš stric je bogat, je li? So, your uncle is rich, is he?

(c) **Zar** used with an affirmative verb conveys a note of surprise:

Zar učiš hrvatski? You don't really mean you're learning Croatian, do you?

8 Other tenses

There are four tenses which you have not yet encountered: the aorist, imperfect, pluperfect and future perfect. Of these, the future perfect is the only one you are likely to use with any frequency, but you should be able to recognise the others, particularly in certain stock phrases.

Aorist

You have already come across the aorist of **biti: bih**, etc. Apart from this, you are most likely to meet it in dialogue involving the verb **reći** (to say):

Doći ću, reče I shall come he said

or in reported speech:

Rekoh da ću doći I said I would come

The aorist endings of **reći** are, then: **(ja) rekoh**, **(ti) reče**, **(on) reče**, **(mi) rekosmo**, **(vi) rekoste**, **(oni) rekoše**

In the modern language, however, the past perfect tense has virtually replaced the aorist. In narration, its place is frequently taken by the *historic present*, i.e. the present tense used with past meaning to convey speed or suddenness of action. Examples:

Pokupiše sav novac i pobjegoše

Pokupe sav novac i pobjegnu

They collected all the money and ran away

Imperfect

Again, this tense has been virtually replaced by the perfect. You may sometimes hear the imperfect of **biti**, however, so it is as well to be able to recognise it: **(ja) bijah** or **bjeh**, **(ti) bješe**, **(on) bješe**, **(mi) bijasmo** or **bjesmo**, **(vi) bijaste**, **bjeste**, **(oni) bijahu**, **bjehu**.

Pluperfect

This is a compound tense, consisting of either the imperfect of **biti** and the active past participle (**bijah došao**) or the perfect tense of **biti** and the past participle (**bio sam došao**). The second method is more common.

Future perfect

While still not very common, this tense is in far more general use than the others and you should therefore learn its formation and usage. It is composed of the present perfective of **biti** and the active past participle:

(ja) budem pisao/pisala	(mi) budemo pisali
(ti) budeš pisao/pisala	(vi) budete pisali
(on) bude pisao	(oni) budu pisali
(ona) bude pisala	(one) budu pisale

This tense is used to express an action in the future which precedes another action in the future:

Javit će ti se čim se bude vratio

He'll ring you as soon as he gets back

Pročitat ću tvoju knjigu kad budem imala vremena

I shall read your book when I have time

The verb in the main clause need not be in the future tense in Croatian and Serbian: a relatively frequent use is in expressing requests which refer to the future:

Kupi mi novine kad se budeš vraćao

Buy me a newspaper on your way home

Ako budete našli kave, uzmite pola kile za mene

If you find any coffee, get me half a kilo

9 Collective numerals

Neuter collective numerals

Where English has a limited number of collective numerals – ‘pair’, ‘trio’, ‘quartet’, ‘quintet’, etc. – it is possible to make a collective neuter form of virtually any number in Croatian and Serbian: **dvoje**, **troje**, **četvoro/četvero**, **petoro**, **šestero**, **sedmero** . . . **jedanaestero**, **dvanaestero**, etc. As in English (‘a pair of . . .’) these numerals take the genitive:

Desetero putnika je došlo na izlet

Ten passengers came on the outing

They are used in two main situations:

(a) When the numeral refers to a group of mixed gender:

Troje nas je sjedilo na terasi

Three of us were sitting on the terrace

Ima šestero gostiju za večeru

There are six guests for dinner

(b) With collective nouns, whether or not they refer to the same gender: **djeca** (which may be mixed or not), **braća** (which is obviously all male):

Imamo troje djece: dva sina i kćer

We have three children: two sons and a daughter

Karte za četvero odraslih i dvoje djece, molim

Tickets for four adults and two children, please

(in this case the children could be two boys or two girls or mixed).

Zamisli, ona ima sedmero braće!

Imagine, she’s got seven brothers!

There are declensions for these numerals, but they are virtually obsolete:

G **dvoga, troga, četvorga**, etc.

D/P/I **dvomu/dvoma, tromu/troma, četvormu/četvorma**, etc.

These forms are never used in the modern language after a preposition, but you will find them occasionally in oblique cases when there is no preposition:

Putovat ću s dvoje prijatelja
I shall travel with five friends

but **Nama dvoma je govorio**
He spoke to the two of us

Masculine collective numerals

These are used to refer to a group of males. They have a feminine singular form, but are followed by a plural verb. If the verb is in the past tense, the participle may be either masculine plural or feminine singular:

Dvojica su došla (or **došli**)
Two men came

They are formed by the addition of the suffix: **-ica** to the collective stem: **dvojica, trojica, četvorica, petorica, šestorica**, etc. They are generally used when the men they refer to have already been mentioned:

Ona ima sedmero braće: trojica su liječnici, dvojica su inženjeri, a dvojica su još uvijek na fakultetu
She has seven brothers; three are doctors, two engineers and two are still at university

'Both'

English 'both' may be expressed in each of these ways:

oboje: Imam sina i kćer, oboje su kod bake
I have a son and a daughter, they are both at their grandmother's

objojica: Poznajem njena dva brata, objojica su zgodna
I know her two brothers, both are good-looking

Distributive numerals

There are adjectival forms of the neuter collective numerals, which agree in all respects with the noun they qualify. They must be used in the following situations: (a) with those nouns which have only plural forms:

dvoja vrata	two doors
troje novine	three newspapers

and (b) with nouns denoting pairs of things:

Kupila sam dvoje cipele

I bought two pairs of shoes

On treba troje nove čarape

He needs three new pairs of socks

Morate otvoriti četvore oči

You must have your eyes wide open

	M	N	F	M	N	F
N	dvoji	dvoja	dvoje	petori	petora	petore
G	dvojih	dvojih	dvojih	petorih	petorih	petorih
D	dvojim	dvojim	dvojim	petorim	petorim	petorim
A	dvoje	dvoja	dvoje	petore	petora	petore
P/I	dvojim	dvojim	dvojim	petorim	petorim	petorim

Čitali smo istu vijest u trojim novinama

We read the same piece of news in three papers

Brava na dvojim vratima se slomila

The lock on two doors is broken

10 Examples of Cyrillic script

NB These texts are all given in the *Serbian* variant of the language. Observe the differences carefully, particularly if it is this variant you are interested in learning. Remember that Serbian may also be written in Latin script. Notice that the texts are set in Belgrade (Beograd) and not Zagreb in this case!

1 Путници се упознају

Господин Камерон	Добар дан
Г Антић	Добар дан
Камерон	Опростите, говорите ли енглески?
Антић	Не, нажалост Разумете ли ви српски?
Камерон	Само мало Учим Ви сте Србин, зар не?
Антић	Јесам А јесте ли ви Енглези?
Камерон	Нисмо Ја сам Шкот, зовем се Алан Камерон А мојажена је Иркинја Она се зове Нора
Антић	Ја сам Марко Антић Драго ми је
Камерон	И мени, такође

2 Разговор у авиону

- Антић Волите ли да путујете?
 Камерон Да, јако волим Често путујем А ви? Волите ли да путујете?
 Антић Волим, нарочито возом кад имам времена На жалост морам често пословно путовати авионом
 Камерон Радо се возим аутом, али Београд је предалеко Волим и ја да путујем возом
 Антић Да, волим да гледам кроз прозор док путујем, помало и да спавам, а понекад излазим у ходник да попушим цигарету. Пријатно је.
 Камерон Слажем се! Али човек ретко има времена за то

3 Долазак на аеродром

- Алан Ево нас у Београду!
 Антић Јесте ли први пут у Београду?
 Нора Јесмо Веома се радујемо
 Антић Аеродром је мали формалности се брзо завршавају Морате да покажете пасоше Имате ли нешто да пријавите?
 Нора Немамо Пртљаг се узима са траке а онда се прелази царинска контрола, зар не?
 Антић Тако је
 Нора Чека ли вас неко овде?
 Антић Да Мој син Управо га видим тамо код врата!
 Нора Пази, Алане, стижу наше ствари! Идем да нађем колица

4 Свако иде на своју страну

- Алан Јесте ли ви из Београда, господине Антићу?
 Антић Нисам, него из Крагујевца, то је градић недалеко од Београда Али остајем мало код сина Камо ви сад идете? Имате ли резервирану собу?
 Алан Имамо Идемо у Хотел Славију Мислим да је близу аутобуске станице
 Антић Јесте Остајете ли у Београду?
 Нора Неколико дана Овде имамо пријатеље Затим идемо на море
 Антић Желим вам пријатан боравак Веома ми је драго што смо се упознали
 Нора И нама Ако доћете у Енглеску, ево наше адресе

Антић Хвала вам, никад се не зна! Свако добро, до виђења!

Алан и Нора `До виђења!

5 Долазак у хотел

Рецепционер Добар дан, изволите

Алан Добар дан Ми смо Алан и Нора Камерон

Рецеп Имате ли резервације?

Алан Имамо, за двокреветну собу

Рецеп Само тренутак Ево Ви сте у соби 25 на другом спрату Молим ваше пасоше Ево вам кључ Дечко ће вам понети ствари Идите лифтом Соба је на левој страни ходника кад изађете из лифта

Нора Хвала Кључ дајте моме супругу ја идем степеницама јер не волим лифт

Алан Торбу можеш дати дечку

У соби

Нора Да видим Ох, каква лепа велика соба! Има и леп поглед на трг ¹

Дечко Ствари су вам овде у орману А у купатилу има туш, лавабо и ВЦ Треба ли вам још нешто?

Алан Не, хвала Све је у реду

¹ This is not the Serbian for 'park' (which is park/park!) but the Slavija Hotel looks out over a busy square – trg/trg in both variants of the language.

Љубавна прича (крај)

Love story The end, p. 276

Недељу дана после разговора с Иваном, стигло је за Миру писмо Није препознала рукопис журно је отворила коверат и видеала што је потајно чекала писао је Младен.

Сплит, 13 септембра

Драга моја луда мала Мире,

Имам утисак да ти ипак дугујем писмо и некакво објашњење Бојим се да си остала сама јер се Иван страшно наљутио Нисам му ништа рекао осим да ми је било незгодно оне вечери код Весне јер ми се чинило

да се са мном манипулира. Онда сам споменуо да сам те отпратио кући. Ваљда је нешто наслутио и поставио је нека директна питања на која сам му морао одговорити отворено као пријатељ. За ово кратко време које сам провео у Загребу Иван ми је постао близак. Братић ми је и стало ми је до њега.

Има још један разлог због којег сам морао одмах да напустим Загреб. Можда си већ погодила. Установио сам да нисам ни ја равнодушан према теби. Твоје друштво ми је било необично привлачно и почео сам да се мало бојим. Ситуација немогућа! А ипак заслужујеш да то знаш. Једног дана ћемо моћи да се сви видимо и да се опет дружимо, сигуран сам. Моћи ћемо да се слатко смејемо лудостима своје младости. За сада је боље да се стане на крај нечему што није ни почело а што је могло да свима нама нанесе штету и бол. Буди срећна и стрпљива. Не љути се на Ивана ни на мене. Све ће то проћи.

Волим те, да знаш,
Младен

Мира је притиснула писмо на груди и бризнула у неутешни плач. Негде дубоко у себи дивила се Младеновој разумној одлучности али у исто време јој се чинило нелогично што је она, поред та два драга младића, морала да остане сама.

Reading passage p. 231

Главне карактеристике хрватског односно српског говорног подоручја до 1991. године

1 Хрватска

Хрватска се највећом делом пружа уз обалу Јадранског мора, и у њој живи око 4,430,000 становника. Главни и највећи град је Загреб с око 800,000 становника, важан центар културних, знанствених и уметничких активности, а такође и важно индустријско и трговачко средиште. У њему се налази нуклеарни институт Руђер Бошковић назван по светски познатом средњовековном физичару из Дубровника, Хрватска академија знаности и

уметности, Лексикографски завод, велика привредна организација «Раде Кончар», углавном произвођач «беле технике», чувени Загребачки велесајам, итд

Хрватска има неколико врло јаких индустријских средишта, као што су Осиек, највећи град у плодној Славонији, Сисак с познатом жељезаром, Ријека на северу Кварнерског залива с великом луком, Пула и Сплит са својим бродоградилиштима Хрватска је позната и по својим великим туристичким могућностима Ову је славу Хрватској донела заиста прекрасна обала Јадранског мора и бројна острва, међу којима су по својој лепоти и туристичким могућностима најпознатији Крк, Раб, Брач, Хвар, Корчула и Мљет Ова је обала изузетно богата историјским и културним споменицима нижу се, на пример, славна катедрала у Шибенику, римска палата у Сплиту, прекрасни градови низ целу обалу, на челу којих се наравно налази древни Дубровник, некадашња Рагуза, град историје, сунца, дивних палата, тврђава и пјаца С његових зидина може се читати поносна историја овога средњовековног града-републике, града који је био мост између Запада и Истока, и који се поноси уметничком, трговачком и поморском традицијом

2 Босна и Херцеговина

Ово је подручје посебно занимљива по свом културно-историјском наслеђу и архитектури Стари градови као Мостар и Сарајево, на пример, задржали су трагове исламско-оријенталне цивилизације својим витким и белим минаретима, џамије привлаче пажњу туриста У Босни се налази и чувени Вишеград, чији је мост постао тема познатог романа «На Дрини ћуприја» југословенског нобеловца Иве Андрића Херцеговина је такође позната по бројним старим надгробним споменицима названим стечци

У БиХ, која је заузимала средишњи део бивше Југославије, живело је око 4 милиона становника, њена територија је обухватала 20 посто целокупне југословенске територије Главни град је Сарајево, који се сместио под сликовитим Требевићем У културном животу, овај град је познат по фестивалу експеримен-

талних сцена и по одличним музичким саставима, поп-групам

Ово подручје познато је по шумском и рудном богатству – угљену, железу, бокситу и каменој соли Осим тога, оно има и голем водени потенцијал који служи за производњу електричне енергије Херцеговина је позната као поризвођач доброг дувана и вина

3 Србија

По површини и становништву Србија је била највећа република у Југославији, јер је заузимала 34,5 посто југословенске територије У њој су се налазиле и две аутономне покрајине – Косово и Метохија, и Војводина У Србији живи преко 8,500 000 становника, од којих на Косову 1,5 (већином Албанаца) а у Војводини преко 2 милиона (међу којима су заступљене различите народности, мацарска је најбројнија) Главни градови су Београд, Приштина и Нови Сад Све народности имају своја стредства информирања на материнском језику, као и своје школе

На овом великом простору има много рудног богатства, највише угљена, бакра, олова и цинка, магнитита, затим природног плина и нафте На Дунаву, у Бердапској клисури, изграђена је велика хидро-електрана и то у сарадњи и договору са суседном Румунијом Војводина, део велике и плодне Панонске низине, познати је произвођач жита и хране На Косову такође постоје повољни услови за пољопривреду, у тој покрајини има много добрих винограда, посебно око Призрена Вочарство је развијено у целој Србији, а нарочито узгој шљива Србија је позната по бројним манастирима, споменицима средњовековне културе, украшеним занимљивим и вредним фрескама и иконама

4 Црна Гора

Црна Гора је била најмања република Југославије, и по површини и по броју становника Налази се на граници с Албанијом и једним делом је смештена уз јадранску обалу Због своје занимљиве историје и сачуване народне традиције, увек је изазивала интерес странаца, те је о њој написано неколико књига на различитим језицима

На Ободу, крај Цетиња радила је већ 1493 једна од првих штампарија међу Јужним Словенима Црна Гора

је планинска земља, о чему говори и њен назив У Црној Гори живи око 600,000 становника, али приличан број Црногораца живи у суседној Србији, нарочито у Београду Главни град је Подгорица (раније Титоград) У овом крају се налази велико језеро – Скадарско, богато рибом На северу, под обронцима Орјена и Ловћена, налази се диван залев – Бока Которска, чијој се лепоти дивио и ирски писац Г Б Шо, а песник А Шантић назвао је овај залев «невестом Јадрана» Зато се туризму посвећује све већа пажња и нови хотели ничу на све стране На југу се налази стари гусарски град Улцињ с на километре дугим, лековитим пешчаним плажама

Letter

Here is an example of handwritten Cyrillic. (See Lesson 20, page 217.)

Драга Марија,

Пишем ово писмо седећи на плажи, наслоњена на јасеник у јако удобном седештилу. Баш ми је лепо! Алан се мјера лобљом с једним малим дечаком који је са нама путовао овомо. Сутра га морамо одвести баки у Загар. Биће нам жао, колико смо се већ навикли на њега. Донекле нам попуњава празнину коју оставља одсуство наше властите деце!

Питалимо се како ли ти и Либери? Једва чекамо да вас видимо. Стремимо се у Дубровник крајем ове недеље и надамо се да ћемо вас тамо

затишје. Ако будете имали времена, били бисмо
 јако захвални када бисте могли да се распитате
 за приватни смештај. Само за Алана и мене. Ако
 се буде случајно десило да малог водимо са собом,
 лако ћемо моћи и њега некако смештити. Имамо
 пуњени магару који се за час може набућити
 или надувати. Како се звао онај леги велики хотел
 преко пута Докрума с погледом на дубровачку луку?
 Је ли Екселсиор? Чини ми се да јесте. Једне године
 сам била нашла дубову собу у том пределу
 али на жалост ми се ћерка разболела па сам
 се морала вратити у Енглеску...

До сада смо путовали без велике муџбе.
 Једном нам се ауто покварио али смо га брзо
 поправили. Иначе смо свуда нашли пријатна места
 за ноћење и све у свему било нам је изванредно
 лепо. Сада желимо још добро разгледати Загари,
 па провешти дан ова у Силишту. Пријатељи у
 Загари нам рекосе да тамо свакако погледамо
 неку оперску представу. Видећемо има ли карата.
 Баш бих био волео, мако Алан није бољна какав
 поубицељ опере. Њега ће вероватно више зани-
 мати музеји и римски остаци града.

Претпоставило ми је да се морам освежити
у мору. Управо гледам како Алан и мали
Ранко скачу и пирскају се водом. Неодољиво!

Пуно позdravi sve svoje,
do skoro viđenja,
voli me tvoja Nora.

Key to main exercises

Lesson 1

Exercise 5

Je. Je. Jest. Jesi. Jesam. Vi. Nisam. Li. Je. Je.

Exercise 7b

Ja sam g. Smith. Tko ste vi? Zovem se Marko. Jeste li Englez? Ne, ja sam Hrvat. Govorite li engleski? Ne, na žalost. Ali vi razumijete hrvatski! Samo malo.

Lesson 2

Exercise 3

u. putovati. je. mora. se. zatvara.

Exercise 4

1 Mora učiti hrvatski. 2 Želiš govoriti jezik. 3 Volimo spavati. 4 Moraju pušiti. 5 Voli se voziti autom.

Exercise 5

1 Vozim se autom. Oni se voze autom. 2 Zove se Alan. Putnik se zove Alan. 3 Žele se sjećati. Ona se želi sjećati. 4 Dućan se zatvara. Dućan se zatvara u 8 sati.

Exercise 6b

1 Volite li putovati? 2 Ne volim putovati zrakoplovom. 3 Gledate li kroz prozor? 4 Često spavaju u vlaku. 5 Voli putovati vlakom kad ima vremena.

Lesson 3*Exercise 1*

gospođe, Hrvati, Englezi, žene, mladići, djevojke, Irkinje, jezici, cigarete, hodnici, prozori, putovnice

Exercise 3b

cigarete. Englezi. torbe. hodnici. luke. sinovi. putovnice. vlakovi. Hrvati. automobili.

Exercise 6c

1 Je li ovo zagrebačka zračna luka? 2 Je li to carinska kontrola? 3 Imate li što prijaviti? 4 Gdje su putovnice? 5 Imate li mnogo stvari? 6 Je li ovo vaša torba? 7 Gdje su kolica? 8 Moramo li pokazati putovnice?

Lesson 4*Exercise 6b*

A: Dobar dan, ja sam Vjekoslav Kovačić. B: Drago mi je. Ja sam John Green. A: Jeste li iz Engleske? Dobro govorite hrvatski. B: Hvala, govorite li vi engleski? A: Samo malo. Ostajete li u Zagrebu? B: Nekoliko dana. Znete li gdje se nalazi hotel Palace? A: Mislim da je blizu kolodvora. Ovo je predgrađe Zagreba. B: Evo nas. Je li ovo vaša torba? A: Je. Hvala. Drago mi je što smo se upoznali. B: I meni. Svako dobro. Do viđenja! A. Do viđenja!

Lesson 5

Exercise 5b

1 Nije daleko do hotela, idemo pješice. 2 Nemamo rezervacije, trebamo dvokrevetnu sobu. 3 Ima samo jedna slobodna soba, nalazi se na trećem katu. 4 Ako imate mnogo prtljage, dječak će vam ponijeti stvari. 5 Kad izađete iz lifta, soba je na lijevoj strani hodnika. 6 Na žalost lift ne radi, treba ići stepenicama. 7 Evo vam ključ, molim vaše putovnice. 8 Soba je velika, i ima lijep pogled na park. 9 Ako trebaš kišobran, stvari su u ormaru. 10 Kupaona je lijepa, ima tuš, umivaonik i WC.

Exercise 5d

Idem u Zagreb. Putujem zrakoplovom. Trebam hotel blizu autobusnog kolodvora. Ne nosim mnogo prtljage pa mogu ići u hotel pješice. Trebam jednokrevetnu sobu. Želim veliku sobu s pogledom na park. Želim biti na prvom katu jer ne volim liftove. Trebam kupaonu s tušem, WC i lavabo.

Lesson 6

Exercise 3

1 Taj Škot je lijep. 2 Irkinje su lijepe. 3 Je li vaša soba udobna? 4 Zrakoplov je udoban. 5 Je li autobusna postaja blizu? 6 Imaš li veliki crni kišobran? 7 Dalmatinke su lijepe i elegantne. 8 Je li vaša torba crna? 9 Zar nije pogled s balkona lijep? 10 Zagreb je ugodan mali grad. 11 Stari Zagreb je malen ali lijep. 12 Je li Palace dobar hotel? 13 Nije velik hotel, ali je udoban. 14 Hvar je lijep otok. 15 To je naš veliki sin, vidite li kroz prozor? 16 On može nositi veliki crni kofer. 17 Ovo je naš hotel; vidiš da je ugodan. 18 Dvokrevetna soba nije jako velika. 19 Ali soba je udobna i ima lijep pogled na park. 20 Putnici su umorni i žele spavati.

Lesson 7

Exercise 1

1 Tko je direktor novog hotela? 2 Gdje je ključ naše sobe? 3 Je li to kuća tvojih roditelja? 4 Preporučujem vam bocu domaćeg vina.

5 Imaš li ključeve crvenog auta? 6 Evo adrese naših prijatelja. 7 Je li ovo mjesto stare gospođe? 8 Kako je ime ukusnog likera? 9 Gdje su vrata spavaće sobe? 10 Je li ovo prtljaga tih novih putnika?

Exercise 3

1 Imate vrlo lijepu kuću. 2 Balkon je pored dnevne sobe. 3 Hodnik vodi u spavaću sobu. 4 Imamo jako malo predsoblje. 5 Volim ove lijepe zastore. 6 Što vidite kroz velike prozore? 7 Gdje su vrata novog stana? 8 Pazite, imaju opasnog psa! 9 Ove kuće imaju lijepe vrtove. 10 Vidite li velike balkone novih stanova?

Lesson 8

Exercise 3

1 Hotel nije daleko *od* glavne pošte. 2 U tramvaju sjedim svaki dan s istim starim gospodinom. 3 Ima izvrstan restoran *u* tom lijepom hotelu. 4 Vidimo svoje stare prijatelje *kroz* staklena vrata. 5 Mislim da se vaša prtljaga nalazi *među* svim tim torbama. 6 Prijatelji pričaju *o* prekrasnom boravku na moru. 7 Kad izlazite *iz* kavane, dućan je na lijevoj strani. 8 Tvoja putovnica se nalazi *na* stolu kod prozora. 9 Sada hodamo *prema* katedrali, preko Trga Bana Jelačića. 10 Ima nekoliko dućana *ispod* trga pred hotelom Esplanade.

Exercise 3b

1 The hotel is not far from the main post office. 2 In the tram I sit every day with the same old man. 3 There is an excellent restaurant in that nice hotel. 4 We see our old friends through the glass door. 5 I think that your luggage is among all those bags. 6 The friends are talking about their lovely stay at the sea. 7 When you come out of the cafe, the shop is on the left. 8 Your passport is on the table by the window. 9 We are now walking towards the cathedral, across Ban Jelačić Square. 10 There are several shops under the square in front of the Esplanade hotel.

Exercise 4a

1. Idete li k bratu? 2 Dućan se nalazi za poštom. 3 Ima lijep parkić pred hotelom. 4 Vodim prijatelja na Gornji grad. 5 Ima lijepa crkva

u tom selu. 6 Idu prema kolodvoru ovom ulicom. 7 Zna li on nešto o Gornjem gradu? 8 Možete vidjeti katedralu nad tim krovovima. 9 Među kućama ima nekih vrlo starih. 10 Gledamo crvene krovove grada pod brijegom.

Lesson 9

Exercise 2

(second stage) 1 Jeste li stigli na granicu jučer? 2 Je li rezervirao dvokrevetnu sobu u hotelu? 3 Jesu li vidjeli katedralu i kazalište? 4 Je li pošla da posjeti prijatelje? 5 Jesu li vidjeli mnogo zanimljivih mjesta u gradu? 6 Jesmo li sreli vaše prijatelje u Dubrovniku? 7 Jeste li pili domaću rakiju kod prijatelja? 8 Je li stavio bijelo vino u frižider jutros? 9 Jesu li se dobro odmorili u udobnom hotelu? 10 Jesi li hodao/jeste li hodali cijeli dan?

Exercise 3

A: I haven't seen the new American film, how about you? B: I haven't either. Have you and Vesna been in the new cafe by the Sava? A: No. We haven't been anywhere. Have the children come to you? B: No. They didn't want to be in the city.

Lesson 10

Exercise 2

1 Je li me vidio? 2 Pokazala mi je knjigu. 3 Idu sa mnom. 4 Dolaziš k meni večeras. 5 Bio je kod mene jučer. 6 Jesu li te posjetili? 7 Dao sam ti knjigu. 8 Sjedili su iza vas. 9 Hodao je prema tebi. 10 To je jako lijepo od vas. 11 Kupio je tu knjigu za sebe. 12 Nosimo mnogo stvari sa sobom. 13 Treba sebi nešto kupiti. 14 Morate više misliti o sebi. 15 Mogu samo za sebe govoriti.

Exercise 3a

1 Jesi li bio kod njega? 2 Sinoć smo je vidjeli. 3 Jeste li ga gledali? 4 Ona se igrala s njom. 5 Dao mu je knjigu. 6 Bili su kod nje na ručku. 7 Putovali su s njima. 8 On je lijepo govorio o njoj. 9 Jeste li ih otpratili na kolodvor? 10 Pokazala ju je prijateljima.

Exercise 3c

John mi je rođak. Brat mi je oženjen Aninom sestrom. Je li ti bratić? Moja sestra je razvedena. Da li se dobro slažu? Imate li braće ili sestara? Udala se jako mlada. Imamo nećaka. Moja majka ima polubrata.

Exercise 4a

1 Vidio/vidjela sam ga. 2 Jesi li je poznavao/poznavala? 3 Pozvali su nas. 4 Čuli smo ih. 5 Molim te/vas. 6 Govorim ti istinu. 7 Jeste li mu dali knjigu? 8 Idemo s njima. 9 Često govorim o njoj. 10 Roditelji su mi kod nas sada.

Lesson 11*Exercise 3b*

Moram napraviti plan za ljetovanje. Želim putovati u Hrvatsku početkom lipnja. Posjetit ću prijatelje u Zagrebu. Ostat ću nekoliko dana s njima. Onda ću poći u Split. Mislim da ću putovati vlakom. Volim vlak i možete mnogo vidjeti kroz prozor. Bit će vruće, ali to neće biti teško za mene. Volim vrućinu. Stalno ću nosit šešir. Onda ću poći na Hvar. Rezervirat ću privatnu sobu blizu mora. Hvar je jako lijep otok. Već sam bio/bila tamo više puta i znam da mi se mnogo sviđa.

Exercise 3c

1 Neće sada doći, jer je kasno. 2 Bit će hladno na vrhu brda, ali je vidik divan. 3 Ručat ćemo kada vi dođete. 4 Nije čuo vijesti, jer ne gleda televiziju. 5 Možete sjedjiti vani ako želite.

Lesson 12*Exercise 4b*

Dva putnika su izašla iz hotela. Željeli su poslati neka pisma i javiti se telefonom prijateljima u Beogradu. – Oprostite, rekli su mladoj ženi na ulici – znate li gdje se nalazi pošta? – Glavna pošta je kod kolodvora. Nije daleko odavde. Skrenite desno i idite pravo. – Hvala lijepa na pomoći. – Nema na čemu. – Do viđenja.

Lesson 13

Exercise 1

1 Soba je na drugom katu. 2 Pošta je iza prvog ugla lijevo. 3 Ovo mu je peta knjiga. 4 Kupaona je treća vrata desno. 5 Je li vam ovo prva večera u Dalmaciji?

Exercise 3

1 Doći će u ponedjeljak. 2 Ostat ćeš do subote, zar ne? 3 Srijedom igram nogomet. 4 Idemo u kino u petak. 5 Što radiš u nedjelju? 6 Uvijek se javljam mami subotom. 7 Nedjeljom idemo s djecom u šetnju. 8 Dolaze na večeru u srijedu. 9 Stigla je rano u četvrtak. 10 Pozvao te je u kazalište u subotu.

Lesson 14

Exercise 2

1 kraćim. 2 bližoj. 3 dubljem. 4 višim. 5 daljih. 6 jaćim. 7 tišem. 8 većoj. 9 skupljem. 10 gorća.

Exercise 3b

1 Više volim putovati zrakoplovom, iako je skuplje. 2 Želi poslati ovo pismo najbržim putem. 3 Dajte mi manju porciju za dijete, molim vas. 4 Spavat će bolje u tišoj sobi. 5 Imate li veće džempere?

Exercise 4

Idemo na odmor u subotu, prekosutra! Ne želimo nositi mnogo, pa ćemo uzeti samo najpotrebnije stvari. Imam jedan mali kofer i jednu veliku torbu. Uzet ću hlače i džemper, jer je ponekad svježavečer, tri haljine, suknju, dvije majice, dvije bluze, cipele, čarape i donje rublje. Muž će uzeti hlače, pet košulja, tri majice, šorc i dva džempere. On može nositi kupaće kostime i ručnike.

Lesson 15

Exercise 2

1 Je li to Jasnin muž? 2 Gdje su putnikove rukavice? 3 Upoznao sam suprugu kod Slavkove sestre. 4 Putujemo Ivanovim novim autom. 5 Hoćeš li vidjeti Aninu majku? 6 Karte su u Norinoj torbi. 7 Ideš li u kino s Tomovim bratom? 8 Želi upoznati ženinog nećaka. 9 Jeste li vidjeli profesorov šešir? 10 Ostavili su prtljagu u Markovom autu.

Lesson 16

Exercise 1

1 Spremit ćemo svoje stvari. 2 Nisu bili u svojoj sobi kad sam ušao. 3 Vidio sam tvoju sestru u pošti. 4 Putujete li svojim autom? 5 Moja kći je pošla u Englesku s nekim svojim prijateljima. 6 Je li vaš sin kod svog prijatelja? 7 Posjetit će moje roditelje. 8 Stanujem kod svoje majke u Londonu. 9 Bili smo u vašoj kući jučer. 10 Mora pisati svojoj sestri! 11 Tražite li svoju torbu? 12 Njen otac slavi svoj osamdeseti rođendan. 13 Putuje li mojim autom? 14 Treba dati ovu knjigu svojoj majci. 15 Hoće li spavati u vašoj sobi?

Exercise 3c

– Halo, je li to Marko? Javljam se da kažem da polazimo na obalu u subotu. – Blago vama! Nadam se da će biti lijepo vrijeme. Ima li koga da vam čuva mačku? Rado ću navratiti s vremena na vrijeme. – Hvala, to je lijepo od tebe. Zlatanov nećak će biti ovdje i on će vjerojatno dovesti neke svoje prijatelje. – Kuda idete? Jeste li rezervirali negdje sobu? – Nismo. Valjda ćemo naći privatni smještaj bez problema. Ne znamo točno gdje ćemo biti. – A kad se vraćate? – Možemo ostati samo pet dana. Hoćeš li biti u Zagrebu kad se vratimo? – Hoću. Poći ću kasnije u Italiju. – Dobro, vidjet ćemo se uskoro dakle. – Sretan put!

Lesson 17

Exercise 1

1 Pismo koje je jutros došlo nalazi se na stolu. 2 Gdje je knjiga koju ste mi dali? 3 Prijatelji s kojima smo putovali su sada u

Engleskoj. 4 To je prvo pismo koje mi je napisao! 5 Mislim da smo izgubili adresu koju nam je dala. 6 Je li ovo hotel u kojem radi tvoja sestra? 7 Tko je ta djevojka s kojom si bio sinoć u kinu? 8 Prijatelj kojem sam dala tvoju adresu dolazi sutra. 9 Auto kojim su putovali je jako malen i star. 10 Zar to nije vaš bratić s kojim smo se upoznali prošle godine?

Exercise 2

1 Vlak kasni trideset minuta. 2 Opet je zakasnio na večeru. 3 Silazim liftom, sačekaj me kod vrata. 4 Oprostite, hoćete li sići na slijedećoj postaji? 5 Napisao sam ovo pismo prošlog tjedna, a još je uvijek na mom stolu! 6 Piše svojem bratu u dnevnoj sobi. 7 Ne sjećam se ove raskrsnice, jesi li siguran da je ovo pravi put? 8 Konačno se sjetio gdje je parkirao auto! 9 Vaša kći jako lijepo čita. Koliko ima godina? 10 Pusti ga da pročita svoje pismo na miru. 11 Moj prijatelj prolazi svaki dan pored tog dućana. 12 Prošao je pored mene na ulici, ali me nije vidio. 13 Sigurna sam da nešto krije od nas. 14 Moja teta je negdje sakrila svoj nakit, a sad ga ne može naći. 15 Pošta se otvara u osam sati, možeš onda kupiti marke. 16 Taj novi dućan će se otvoriti petog listopada. 17 Nikad ne večeramo prije osam i trideset navečer, pa dođi kad možeš. 18 Hoće li moći pojesti cijelu ovu porciju? 19 Popij to crno vino, onda ćeš moći probati ovo bijelo. 20. Pijemo domaću rakiju, hoćete li i vi?

Exercise 4

1 Netko je došao da te vidi. 2 Ne želim ni s kim da se vidim! 3 Je li bilo koga kod kuće? 4 Ne, nije bilo nikoga. 5 O čemu ste razgovarali? 6 Kome će dati knjigu? 7 Govorio mi je o nekome u hotelu. 8 S kim si bio na moru? 9 Čija je ta lijepa kuća? 10 Čime ću pisati? Nemam olovke.

Lesson 18

Exercise 3

Da čujem! Idimo! Da probam! Neka pjevaju! Neka sjedne! Neka uđu! Da vidim! Popijmo ovo vino! Neka jede! Neka još malo čitaju!

Exercise 5b

Teško je biti dijete. Tvoji roditelji, nastavnici, bilo tko stariji, svi ti stalno govore što moraš raditi: – Ustani, obuci se, operi zube, namjesti krevet, ne zaboravi se počešljati, nemoj zakasniti na autobus, pojedj sve, budi doma u sedam sati, javi se čim stigneš, dođi ovamo, nemoj biti bezobrazan, ne razgovaraj sa mnom na takav način! – Pitam se hoću li ja na takav način govoriti svojoj djeci?

Lesson 19*Exercise 1*

1 Ne bih htio/htjela izaći danas. 2 Biste li htjeli putovati s njima? 3 Bismo li mogli pomoći? 4 Pozvao/pozvala bih je, ali ne bi došla. 5 Bilo bi bolje ručati ovdje. 6 Ne bi željela sjediti s njim. 7 Bi li mi ti pisao/pisala? 8 Bi li u to vjerovao? 9 Ne bi prepoznao djecu. 10 Bi li mogli doći sutra?

Exercise 2

1 Ako ih želiš vidjeti, dođi odmah. 2 Da znaš što mi je rekla, ne bi se smijao. 3 Ako idemo ovim putem, brže ćemo stići na obalu. 4 Ako si ga želio vidjeti, zašto nisi rekao? 5 Da sam pročitala pismo, znala bih da dolaziš. 6 Film bi vam se svidio, da ste ga gledali. 7 Bi li oni putovali s nama da smo išli vlakom? 8 Da je stigla na vrijeme, upoznala bi našeg sina. 9 Recite mi ako avion kasni, molim vas. 10 Ako si gladna, možeš večerati s nama.

Exercise 3

1 Čujem da se ovdje pravi jako dobar šir. 2 Može li se slušati Radio-Zagreb u Londonu? 3 Njegove knjige se čitaju širom svijeta. 4 Katedrala se jasno vidi na brdu. 5 Prtljaga se ne primi u garderobi poslije 22 sati.

Exercise 4

A: Kakvo je danas vrijeme? Lijepo izgleda. B: Zašto pitaš? A: Mislio sam da možemo nekamo izaći, ako ne pada kiša. B: Hladno je, više bih voljela ostati kod kuće. A: Ne možeš ostati cijeli dan unutra! B: Zašto? A: Hajde, sunce sja. Mogli bismo na Sljeme.

B: Vjetar uvijek puše na brijegovima. A: Gluposti! B: Idi ti onda. A: Bilo bi ljepše da smo skupa. B: Slažem se. Kako bi bilo da se skupa prošetamo do Gradske kavane?

Exercise 5

Posljednji putnici su sišli u predgrađu i Tina je ostala sama u kupeu. Ustala je i prišla prozoru. Plave oči su promatrale neonske reklame koje su je podsjećale na njezin rodni grad. Stajala je uz taj prozor nekoliko sati ranije i pozdravljala Zagreb. Glavni kolodvor je bio jedini znanac koji ju je ispratio.

S uzdahom je obukla bundu, uzela torbu i izišla na hodnik. Putnici su mahali i pozdravljali rođake i znance. Tinu je obuzeo čudan osjećaj osamljenosti. Vlak se zaustavio i ona je među prvima skočila na peron.

(*Svijet*, 2 November 1983, p. 57)

Lesson 20

Exercise 1

1 Mislim da sam čuo kako dolaze. 2 Jesi li čuo kako pjeva? 3 Našli smo ih kako se igraju u parku. 4 Nije primijetio kako izlazim. 5 Stajala je kod prozora i gledala kako ljudi prolaze.

Exercise 3

1 Romani o Tarzanu do danas su prevedeni na osamdesetak jezika i tiskani u ukupno 70 milijuna primjeraka. Filmove o njemu gledalo je 200 milijuna ljudi, a stripove svakodnevno objavljuju tisuće listova. Što je razlog Tarzanovoj popularnosti? Premda je u usporedbi sa suvremenim avanturističkim junacima prilično staromodan, on uspijeva već sedamdeset godina za sebe vezati publiku zbog toga što je u svim medijumima simbol sve učestalijeg odbacivanja civilizacije i vraćanja prirodi.

(*Danas*, 19 October 1982, p. 69)

2 Zagrebačke soliste osnovao je prije gotovo trideset godina Antonio Janigro. Javnosti su već godinama poznati kvalitetom interpretacija. Dosta se zna i o njihovim uspjesima, ali ne i kako oni zapravo žive, rade, s kakvim se problemima susreću.

(*Ibid.*, p. 64)

Translations of main texts

Below are given translations of the main dialogues of units 1–5 and also of ‘Love story’ and ‘A story of our time’.

Lesson 1

The travellers meet

- Mr. CAMERON: Good morning. (lit. Good day)
Mr ANTIĆ: Good morning.
CAMERON: Excuse me, do you speak English?
ANTIĆ: No, unfortunately. Do you understand Croatian?
CAMERON: Only a little. I'm learning. You're Croatian (lit. a Croat) aren't you?
ANTIĆ: Yes. And are you English? (lit. English people)
CAMERON: No. I'm a Scot, my name is Alan Cameron. And my wife is Irish (lit. an Irish woman). Her name is Nora.
ANTIĆ: I am Marko Antić. Pleased to meet you.
CAMERON: And I you.

Lesson 2

Conversation in the plane

- Mr ANTIĆ: Do you like travelling?
Mr CAMERON: Yes, I like it very much. I travel often. What about you? Do you like travelling?
ANTIĆ: Yes, I do, especially by train when I have time. Unfortunately I often have to travel by plane on business.
CAMERON: I like driving by car, but Zagreb is too far. I too like travelling by train.

- ANTIĆ: Yes, I like to look out of the window while I'm travelling, also to sleep a little, and sometimes I go out into the corridor to smoke a cigarette.
- CAMERON: I agree! But one rarely has time for that . . .

Lesson 3

Arrival at the airport

- ALAN: Here we are in Zagreb!
- ANTIĆ Is this the first time you are in Zagreb?
- NORA: Yes. We are very pleased.
- ANTIĆ The airport is small. The formalities are quickly completed. You must show your passports. Have you anything to declare?
- NORA: No. The luggage is taken from the conveyor belt and then one passes through customs, is that right?
- ANTIĆ That's it.
- NORA: Is anyone waiting for you here?
- ANTIĆ Yes, my son. In fact I see him by the door!
- NORA: Look out, Alan, our things are coming! I'm going to find a trolley.

Lesson 4

Where are you from?

- ALAN: Are you from Zagreb, Mr Antić?
- ANTIĆ No, but from Karlovac, that's a small town not far from Zagreb. But I'm staying for a little at my son's. Where are you going now? Have you a reserved room?
- ALAN: Yes. We're going to the Hotel Palace. I think it's quite near the bus station.
- ANTIĆ Yes it is. Are you staying in Zagreb?
- NORA: For a few days. We have friends here. Then we're going to the sea.
- ANTIĆ I wish you a pleasant stay. I'm very pleased to have met you.
- NORA: So are we. If you come to England, here is our address.

on. They say it's excellent.' 'OK I just feel like going to the cinema!'

3. 'Have you got any money?' asks Mira. 'Wait while I look. But, where's my wallet? It's not here, imagine. It must be at home.' 'Ivan,' says Mira in a serious tone, 'what is this? You never have any money. I always pay for everything. I've had enough.' 'Don't be like that! I'm going to get my wallet. We can meet at the cinema.' 'I won't go on like this. I'm going home to listen to music. You can come if you like.' 'Thanks. I don't feel like music. I'm going to the cinema.' 'Bye then.' 'Goodbye.'

4 'Hello, Mira Petrić here. Who is it?' 'Ivan speaking.' 'Hello, Ivan.' 'Listen, Mira, I have to see you. What are you doing?' 'Nothing. I've got (some) friends (here). We're talking.' Pause. 'You can't come out, then?' 'No.' 'Who's there?' 'Why do you ask?' 'No reason.' Pause. 'So, you're not coming out?' 'No.' 'OK then, if that's how it is. 'Bye.' 'Bye.' A few days later. The phone rings at Ivan's. 'Hello.' 'Is that you, Ivan?' 'Yes.' 'Mira here.' 'Hi.' 'How are you?' 'OK. You?' 'All right. What's new?' 'Nothing special. I'm sitting around, reading something.' 'Oh?' Pause. 'Why are you calling, Mira? What do you want?' 'Listen, Ivan, don't be so angry!' 'I'm not angry.' 'You don't phone.' 'Do you want me to?' 'Well, we're friends, aren't we?' 'Of course we're friends.' 'You're cross again?' 'No I'm not. But someone's calling. I've got to go.' 'Goodbye, then.' 'Bye, Mira.'

5 Ivan and Mira meet in the street. 'Oh, hi, Mira! How are you? What are you up to?' 'I'm OK. I'm going to Nada's.' 'You look nice. New dress?' 'Why no! I've been wearing it for years!' 'It suits you. May I see you to Nada's?' 'If you like. What have you been doing recently?' 'Nothing. Sitting around at home.' 'Why don't you go out?' 'You know I'm not interested in going out without you.' 'Oh, Ivan . . .' Ivan carefully takes hold of Mira's hand. She does not say anything. They walk like that for some time without a word. 'Hey, Mira, where are we going? This isn't the way to Nada's!' 'Oh, you're right! I hadn't noticed!' 'Is she waiting for you?' 'No.' 'OK then. Can we walk a bit?' 'Yes.' Pause. Ivan stops and looks Mira in the eyes. 'How simple everything is all of a sudden. I'm glad that we're here, together.' 'Me too.'

6 'What are you doing tonight, Mira?' Ivan asked suddenly. 'Nothing special. I've arranged with Nada to meet some of her friends in town. Why do you ask?' 'My cousin's coming. He's older than me, he's just come from the coast. He lives on an island. He's never been in Zagreb, so I wanted to show him the town.' 'Well then, join us, we've got a nice crowd and we always enjoy new acquaintances.' 'Agreed. I have to meet him at the station this afternoon and take him home. Come to the City Cafe at 6 p.m.' 'OK. Now I really must go to Nada's. See you!' 'Bye' 'Bye!' The young people kissed, as though nothing had happened.

7 In the evening, the young people meet in town. Ivan's cousin Mladen is a tall young man with black hair and blue eyes, handsome, cheerful and witty. He makes an exceptional impression on all the girls. 'Come on, tell (us) how your life is on the island,' suggests Ivan, when they have all sat down at a table and ordered coffee and cake. 'I can't imagine that it could interest you: life is fairly boring there. There's an awful lot of sea and nothing happens.' 'What are your plans now?' asks Mira. 'Well, I've got a degree in engineering, you know. Now I have to go abroad somewhere to specialise.' All the girls looked at him, a bit sad and disappointed, when they heard that he would soon be leaving.

8 The young people went to Cmrok for a walk. The summer evening was exceptionally beautiful, still and warm. Soon the moon would be full. 'How lovely it is here in the moonlight,' said Maja, one of the girls in the group. She was walking quite close to Mladen, and thinking how strong his shoulders were. 'Yes, lovely, especially for sleepwalkers!' Mladen went on without looking at her. 'On which island did you grow up, Mladen?' asked Mira. 'On Lastovo, but I also lived on Korčula.' 'Oh, how lovely it is there!' sighed Maja. 'Did you graduate in Split?' 'Yes. It's not a bad place to study!' 'I can imagine! Lucky you!' laughed Mira. 'But, even so, how do you like the capital city of Croatia?' asked Ivan. 'I like what I've seen very much, but I must say that I've been looking at it over these lovely women's heads, and that makes the landscape even more beautiful.' Each of the girls smiled secretly to herself, for each thought that these words referred to her.

9 'I say, Mira,' said Ivan a few days later, 'Mladen has fitted into our group really well from the first day, don't you think?' 'Fantastically, really. He's an exceptional young man in every way.' Ivan looked at her seriously, 'Well, there's no need to exaggerate. But he's fun to be with.' 'How much longer is he staying in Zagreb?' 'I don't know exactly. He said he'd come for ten days and a whole week has gone already.' 'What shall we do tonight?' 'You know I always play basket-ball on Tuesdays. We have a match tonight. Mladen will probably come with me.' 'If he hasn't any plans of his own . . . I get the impression that he likes Vesna.' 'Do you think so, seriously? I hadn't noticed. Well, she's a good-looking bird.' Ivan obviously felt better. 'Come on, it's time I went. They're waiting for me for lunch. I hope your team wins this evening. See you tomorrow.' 'Bye, Mira.'

10 Mira was at Vesna's in the afternoon. 'Vesna, please, if you're my friend, invite Mladen to come over or go out with us this evening.' 'How can I suggest such a thing?' 'Easily. You surely see that I can't. Because of Ivan, I mean.' Vesna looked at her carefully, 'You like Mladen a lot, don't you?' 'I don't know, Vesna, I'm confused and worried. I don't know what's happening to me. One minute I think I truly love Ivan, but as soon as I look at Mladen, my head starts spinning.' 'You're not the only one, it seems!' 'Perhaps. It doesn't matter. Will you ring? Please. We'll bake a cake so tell him he must come and see what (good) housewives we are!' 'All right, Mira, calm down. I'll ring. Only it's not my fault if you complicate your life!' 'Of course not. Thanks, Vesna, you're a real pal!'

11 'Hello, is Mladen there, please?' 'No. Who's speaking?' 'This is Vesna.' 'Vesna! Ivan here.' 'Oh, hello, Ivan.' 'So you're looking for Mladen?' 'Yes . . . ' Vesna was embarrassed. 'Will he be back soon?' 'I'm expecting him any minute. Is there a message?' ' . . . No . . . , shall I ring later?' 'I don't know, he may come with me to the match. If you tell me what it's about I'll tell him, then he'll ring you.' 'All right, thanks . . . I just wanted to invite him to my place, I know you're going out, so, so that he's not bored . . . But if he's going to the match . . . never mind. Tell him there'll be a few friends round at my place, so if he feels like it he'll be welcome . . . ' 'I will. Thanks, Vesna. 'Bye.' 'Thank you, Ivan.' Vesna put the

receiver down and wiped her forehead. She felt very uncomfortable.

12 'Heavens, Mira, that's the last time I do you a favour!' 'You don't mean it. Was it really so very awkward?' 'Not very, terribly! What will Mladen think of me now?' 'I'll explain that it's my fault. Not immediately, of course. But one day. Did Ivan ask whether I would be at your place?' 'No, I don't think it occurred to him.' 'Better.' 'Hey, Mira, you're not going to hide it from him?' 'Of course not. You don't seem to have much faith in me.' 'That's not true. Only I don't know what you intend to do.' 'I don't know either, to tell you the truth. But I can tell you that I want Mladen to come tonight with all my heart.'

13 The girls were sitting, listening to music. It was already getting late and Mladen was not there. 'I know he won't come,' said Mira in a dejected tone. 'Perhaps it's better.' 'Goodness, Vesna,' said their friend Ankica, 'you never undertake anything, you don't risk anything. What kind of life is that, without any danger, without any uncertainty?' 'All right, I admit it can be boring, but when other people's feelings are involved, I certainly won't take any risks.' The bell. Ankica glanced at Mira. 'You're quite pale, Mira! Something serious is happening to you!' Vesna went to the door. Soon Mladen's voice was heard. 'It's nice of you to invite me. Thanks very much for thinking of me.' 'Well it's quite natural when you're otherwise on your own and we're sitting here. Please go in. I'll bring the cake Mira and I baked.'

14 As soon as Mladen went in there was an awkward silence among the girls. 'OK, young ladies, offer me a seat!' 'Sorry, Mladen, we really are rude! Please come over here and sit next to Ankica on the sofa. It'll be more comfortable than on that chair.' Mira got up from the sofa to offer him her place. 'Don't get up, there's room for (us) all.' Mladen sat down, right next to Mira, who was still unusually pale. 'Come on,' said Ankica gaily, 'tell us what you've been doing today. Do you still like Zagreb?' 'Of course,' Mladen began, with the intention of making a joke as usual. Then he changed his mind and fell silent. The whole evening passed pleasantly, but in a somewhat quiet and subdued manner. They listened to

music, drank beer and in the end they even sang. But mainly mournful Bosnian love songs.

15 At eleven o'clock, Mira looked at her watch. 'Heavens, folks, I must go at once. My old man will kill me if I'm late.' 'You're right, it's time,' said Ankica. 'I must go too.' 'Which way are you going?' asked Mladen, 'I could see you home.' 'You're very kind. Well, I live three houses from here! So that wouldn't take much of your time. But Mira has more than half an hour's journey.' 'Oh, thanks. I'm used to it. There's a bus more or less outside the house. I don't need anything,' said Mira decisively. 'Perhaps, but that's how I've been brought up. What can I do? I wouldn't sleep properly if I thought you had been left alone in the dark.' 'Thanks, then. I'll just get my mac then we can go if you're so insistent.' 'Not another word. Thanks again, Vesna, it was very nice.' 'Thanks for coming. Goodbye. 'Bye, Mira.' 'Bye, Vesna, till tomorrow. And . . . thanks.'

16 Mira sat in the bus without a word. 'Why are you so quiet?' asked Mladen cheerfully, 'it's not your style, as far as I've been able to judge.' 'No, it's not, you're right.' 'What is it then, you seem sad.' 'I'm not, really, I don't know what's got into me lately . . . Forget it. How long do you intend to stay in Zagreb?' 'I'm not quite sure. A few more days.' 'Have you . . . any obligations?' began Mira. 'Is . . . anyone waiting for you?' 'A girl, you mean?' 'Well, . . . anyone.' 'In a way, yes. I've been going out with a girl for some time, but ' 'But?' 'I don't know how long it will last. And you, how long have you and Ivan been together?' 'Nearly a year. But ' 'But?' 'We'd better not talk about it. I daren't. Especially not to you.' 'Why? Aren't we friends?' 'Yes, Mladen. Come on, this is my stop.'

17 When they got off the bus, Mladen took Mira by the hand and stopped her under a street-light. He leaned against the post. 'Listen, Mira,' he said, 'why are you so mysterious? I want to know what's going on. Why did you say "especially not to me"? There's something I don't understand going on.' 'It's better not to ask, honestly, Mladen, it's better not to put it into words . . . I've been feeling strange ever since you came. I want to be with you all the time. Now, alone with you tonight, I think I'm in heaven. I want this moment to last

forever. But as soon as I say it, I know it will all be over immediately.' 'Are you crazy? What about Ivan? While I'm a guest in his house? How could you think of such a thing!' 'Don't, Mladen, please! I tell you, I know it's all over as soon as it's put into words. Oh, how happy I was this evening, and how short a time it lasted!' 'Don't be tragic. Nothing has happened. I have to go home in any case.' 'What's your girl friend called?' 'Why do you ask? It's not because of her.' 'Why then?' 'Come on, where's your house? It's late.' 'So, it's over.' 'Nothing's over, there wasn't anything anyway. Come on, go inside and sleep peacefully. This conversation will seem comic in the morning.' 'Good night. Let's shake hands and don't be angry with me. . . .'

18 The next day, Mira got up late. Mladen was constantly in her mind. She kept hanging round the telephone. Finally she went out for a long walk with the dog. Her parents watched her suspiciously. 'What's the matter, dear? Are you ill?' 'No. There's nothing wrong with me. I want to go for a walk. Leave me alone.' When she came back in the afternoon, she sat down straight away to phone Vesna. 'Ah, Mira, where have you been? Ivan has rung several times, looking for you. There was no one at your place and he didn't know where to find you.' 'I went out. Did Ivan say anything?' 'About what?' 'Mladen. He may be leaving soon.' 'How did it go with him? It turned out well that he was able to see you home, didn't it?' 'I don't know, perhaps it wasn't so good.' 'Why not?' 'I said too much. That's why he's going so soon.' 'Maybe it isn't that. Go on, give Ivan a ring and see.' 'I will, I'll call round later, OK?' 'Of course, 'bye.'

19 'Hello, is Ivan at home please?' 'Yes, just a moment. Who is it?' 'Mira.' 'Ah, Mira, he's been looking for you all day. How are you, dear?' 'Fine, thanks, Auntie Dragica. I'm sorry Ivan's been trying to find me for so long.' 'I'll go and call him now. He'll be pleased.' 'Hello, Mira.' 'Hello, Ivan. How was it at the match?' 'Fine. And how was your secret meeting?' 'What secret meeting? At Vesna's you mean?' 'What else?' 'Why, Ivan, there wasn't anything secret about it, why shouldn't Vesna invite whoever she likes to her place?' 'There's no need for any explanation. You know perfectly well what I mean. Mladen is leaving this evening. Because of you. I hope you're proud of yourself!' 'Why should I be proud?

Oh, Ivan, let's meet so that I can explain!' 'There's no point. I wouldn't have anything to say to you. That's why I was looking for you, just to say that you shouldn't expect me any more. Goodbye.' 'Ivan . . . Ivan . . . ?!'

20 A week after her conversation with Ivan, a letter arrived for Mira. She did not recognise the handwriting. She hurried to open the envelope and saw what she had been secretly waiting for: it was a letter from Mladen.

My dear, crazy little Mira,

I have the impression that after all I owe you a letter and some kind of explanation. I'm afraid you've ended up on your own because Ivan was terribly angry. I didn't tell him anything, except that I had felt uncomfortable that evening at Vesna's because I felt someone was playing games with me. Then I mentioned the fact that I had taken you home. He must have guessed something and he asked me some direct questions which I had to answer straight, as a friend. I had grown very close to Ivan in the short time I spent in Zagreb. He is my cousin and I care about him.

There's another reason why I had to leave Zagreb straight away. Perhaps you've already guessed. I realised that I wasn't indifferent to you either. I found your company unusually attractive, and I had begun to be a bit afraid. An impossible situation! But still, you deserve to know. One day we'll all be able to meet and be friends again, I'm sure. We'll be able to have a good laugh at the foolishness of our youth. For the moment it's better to put an end to something which hasn't even begun, but which could have caused all of us harm and pain. Be happy and patient. Don't be angry with Ivan or me. It will all pass.

I love you, you know.

Mladen.

Mira pressed the letter to her breast and burst into insoluble tears. Somewhere deep within her she admired Mladen's sensible decisiveness but at the same time it seemed illogical that, with both these dear boys, she had to be left on her own.

Translation of 'A story of our time'

1 Mark Dunlop is English. He is travelling to Zagreb. He is learning Croatian. He understands the language well, but he says that he only speaks a little. Now he is tired. Let him sleep!

2 Mark Dunlop is travelling by plane to Zagreb. He usually likes travelling, but today he is tired. He tries to read (his) text-book: he must learn Croatian! The stewardess comes past with drinks. Mark drinks a whisky. His eyes close. The text-book closes.

3 The stewardess comes up to Mark. 'Hello, sir, here we are in Zagreb!' Mark wakes up. 'Really? Great! Thanks!' He takes his bag and umbrella out of the luggage rack and goes towards the exit from the aircraft. 'Welcome to Zagreb! Goodbye!' 'Thank you! Goodbye!'

4 Mark goes slowly out of the aircraft. It is a beautiful day in Zagreb. He feels stupid carrying an umbrella. 'Like a real Englishman,' he thinks. He quickly finds his luggage. He forgets to look for a trolley. He carries his bag through customs control. Luckily it is not heavy. He has nothing to declare. He goes out through the door.

5 At the airport, Mark Dunlop meets the colleague with whom he is to work throughout his stay in Zagreb. 'Good afternoon! You are Mark Dunlop?' 'Yes! Good afternoon! And you are?' 'I am Jasna Culek.' 'Ah, pleased to meet you!' 'Welcome to Zagreb!' 'Thank you! I'm really pleased!' 'You must be tired. Please get into the car. We're going to your hotel.' 'I'm not tired, but I want to see the hotel. Thank you.' 'You're welcome!'

6 Mark Dunlop goes into his room. It is small, but comfortable. He likes the room: the walls are painted a pleasant light-blue colour, there are nice pictures of Zagreb on the walls. Mark does not want to unpack straight away. He takes a beer from the mini-bar, switches on the television and stretches out on the bed. The telephone rings. Jasna is calling. She's inviting him to dinner. Mark puts the glass on the little table beside the bed. He gets up with a sigh. He opens his bag and takes out his things. He looks sadly at his clothes: everything is crumpled.

7 Jasna takes Mark to the old part of the town to a flat on the ground floor of a large, old house. One enters the flat through a lovely garden, full of flowers. Jasna introduces Mark to her parents and offers him a seat beside the window. Jasna's father asks Mark what he would like to drink and brings homemade brandy. Mark remembers the beer in the hotel and the whisky on the plane and drinks slowly. He knows that he should drink the whole glass immediately, but he feels that he must be careful, he dare not get drunk.

8 The next day, Mark wakes early. He has to get ready for a visit to Jasna's office. He must iron a clean white shirt and choose an appropriate tie. He goes down to the restaurant and orders a white coffee. Soon Jasna comes for him. She is driving a little, old car, very convenient for the town. The streets are full of traffic: it is Monday and everyone is rushing to work. The office is in the new part of town, on the other side of the Sava river, over a big bridge.

9 Mark Dunlop has begun to keep a diary: the working part of his stay in Croatia is beginning. He has decided to keep a diary in Croatian in order to practise the language at the same time: 'Today I was in the main office for the first time. I was excited because I didn't know what was awaiting me, for instance: did everyone know English or would I have to say everything in Croatian straight away? Luckily it all went well: I spoke sufficiently well and I understood everything they said. When it was a matter of something complicated, Jasna translated. It was pleasant. They were all kind.'

10 Today Jasna took me to the factory to see various products. It was all very interesting. They showed me the whole production process, while I explained to them how it is all done at home. Of course it is fairly different, but I think that we will be able to work together nicely nevertheless. The director talked to me for a long time about various possibilities.

11 Today the director of the firm called a meeting in the main office. He showed me the business projects for the whole year: what is done in spring, summer, autumn and winter. In spring on the whole contracts are signed with the producers of raw material – in this case fruit. Agricultural businesses and farms are visited. In summer and autumn there is most work over processing the raw materials and various trade

fairs. In winter people work on maintenance of the plant and the acquisition of new outlets.

12 Today the director explained that the firm has several branches in various towns of Croatia. The main office is in Zagreb of course, then there are two big factories (I've already been with Jasna to one near Karlovac). After that there are five regional offices, which are mostly concerned with buying raw materials on the local market. Each factory has its manager, and each regional office its head who are directly responsible to the managing director in Zagreb.

13 After getting back from the office today, I sat down with Jasna in the hotel bar to discuss the rest of my stay. I have another two weeks at my disposal. I want to get to know the work of every branch, so we have decided that the day after tomorrow, that is the fifth of October, I shall set off with her by car to visit the whole network. We shall start in the north and go round all the eastern areas. Then, around the tenth, we shall set off towards the west, and come back by the southern road. We shall arrive in Karlovac on the seventeenth.

14 I have begun to pack for the journey, but I have established that I did not bring enough shirts from home. It will be hard to iron anything while we are on the road, so I think that it will be sensible if I buy a couple more shirts which can be washed and immediately dried. As the larger shops work till 8 p.m., I shall go tomorrow after the official lunch with representatives of the Chamber of Commerce. For that meeting I shall have to put on a jacket and tie – which is unpleasant, as I have quite lost the habit in the informal atmosphere of 'our' office.

15 This morning I got up early. I cancelled the room and paid the bill. At the agreed time, Jasna appeared in an unknown car. I asked her whether we would be travelling in this car, and she explained that she had borrowed the car from the firm because it was bigger; there was more room for our things and it would be more comfortable for the journey. Besides, if necessary we would be able to take colleagues to business lunches or dinners, which we could not have done in that other car. But Jasna said that she would miss it nevertheless, because she was very fond of her old, reliable 'pal'.

16 Last night I came back from the journey. It was all very interesting but I must say that I feel exhausted. I didn't manage to write this diary at all. We were on our feet the whole day. During the day we looked in detail at factories and talked with people in the local offices. Now I have a clear insight into the whole network of this extensive firm. And after the official visit, there were obligatory formal lunches and dinners, where they treated us abundantly to vast quantities of delicious food and drink.

17 Today I had a meeting in the first factory where we were: where the main products are fruit juice and jam. I believe that these products could succeed on our market. And at the same time, I would like to try to place some British products, biscuits for example, whose basic component would also be fruit. Now I must see with the management board what the conditions are for the import of products from abroad, what taxes there are and generally what are all the procedures involved.

18 Jasna came early for me to take me to the main office. I dressed formally for this important meeting. We arrived in time. They met us warmly and took us into the main conference hall. They had even invited a representative of the Chamber of Commerce who came at the end to explain to me the principles of the import and export system in Croatia. Before that I talked about all the details of the business and representatives of the various departments of the firm prepared contracts and various other necessary papers.

19 At the very end of the meeting, when everything had been agreed, the accountant came who is responsible for everything concerned with paying taxes. It was fairly complicated for me but they were all good-humoured and patient and explained everything to me slowly. The main thing is that value added tax is paid on imported goods but not on processed goods for export. At the end the director of the firm came so that we could formally sign the contracts. Then I gave a short speech (in Croatian!) in which I said how pleased I was with my business here and that I expected we would work successfully together. Now I can hardly wait to get home and start on our shared business!

20 Croatia's geographical position makes it an interesting business partner. After the dissolution of the Communist

system and the introduction of political pluralism, Croatia is currently designing a legal system that will help direct her towards a market economy. In line with these changes, the Croatian Chamber of Commerce has organised itself as a modern business and professional institution tailored to the needs of businesses on the territory of Croatia, as well as abroad. The blueprint for the present Croatian Chamber of Commerce is based on West European chambers with a few special features rooted in our own traditions. The Chamber includes over twenty county chambers and a central chamber based in Zagreb, the capital of Croatia. The Chamber's main objectives are the promotion of Croatian business interests at home and abroad, the exchange of business information between potential partners through an effective information database, and business education. In recent times, the Croatian economy has undergone extensive changes. Thousands of new private enterprises have sprung up. There are approximately 60,000 active economic entities in Croatia today. Its abundant natural and human resources and a longstanding business tradition make Croatia an ideal business partner for the future.

Croatian and Serbian–English glossary

(The brackets enable you to see both ‘ijekavian’ and ‘ekavian’ variants. The ‘ijekavian’ dialect is spoken in Croatia, most of Bosnia, Hercegovina and Montenegro. Words marked (C) are specifically Croatian, (B) Bosnian, and (S) Serbian. The numbers in brackets refer you to the appropriate lessons.)

a	but, and (1)	bolnica	hospital (15)
ako	if (4)	bolničarka	nurse
ambulanta	clinic	bombon	sweet (17)
apoteka	chemist	bor	pine tree (18)
auto(mobil)	car (2)	boravak	stay, sojourn (4)
baka	grandmother (10)	brak	marriage (10)
balkon	balcony (6)	brat	brother (10) (pl.: braća coll., f. sg.)
barem	at least (15)	bratić	nephew (10)
besplatan (besplatna)	free (19)	breskva	peach
bijeli (E beo , bela)	white (7)	br(ij)eg	hill
bilježnica (E beležnica)	notebook (20)	brinuti se (brinem se)	to worry
blagajna	till	buk	cascade
bl(ij)ed	pale (18)	bura	north wind, storm (19)
blizu	near (3)	carinik	customs officer
u blizini	nearby	carinska kontrola	customs control
bluza	blouse (14)	cestarina	road toll (15)
boja	colour	cigareta	cigarette
bol(j)eti (impers., to hurt used only in 3rd pers.		c(ij)eli (E ceo , cela)	whole (9)
boli me . . .)		c(ij)ena	price (19)

crn	black (3)	diviti se (imp.)	to admire, be amazed (19)
crno vino	red wine	d(j)eca (coll.)	children (6)
crven	red	d(ij)ete (G	child
cv(ij)ćeće (coll.)	flowers (6)	d(j)eteta)	
cv(ij)et	a flower	d(j)ećak	boy (15)
čas	moment (5)	d(j)ed	grandfather (10)
čarapa	stocking, sock (14)	d(j)elo	work, opus
čaša	glass (9)	d(j)elovati (imp.	to act, work (23)
čekati (imp.)	to wait	d(j)elujem)	
čestitati (imp.	to congratulate (12)	d(j)evojka	girl
and pf. + D)		dnevni	daily (adj. from dan) (6)
često	often (2)	doba (n.	time, period, season; u ovo doba at this time (12); godišnja doba seasons
čim	as soon as (18)	incomplete declension)	
čitati (pročitati	to read (2)	dobar (dobra)	good (1)
pf.)		dobiti (pf.	to receive, acquire (9)
čov(j)ek	man, person (2)	dobijem)	
čudan, čudna	strange (16)	dobro došao	welcome (6)
čuditi se (imp)	to be surprised	doći (pf. dođem,	to arrive, come (6)
čuti (čujem,	to hear (16)	dolaziti,	
imp. and pf.)		imp.)	
čuvati (sačuvati,	to keep, preserve	dok	while (2)
pf.)		dok ne . . .	until
čuvati se	to take care (11)	dokaz	proof
da	yes	dolazak (G	arrival (3)
da	that (1), in order to (2)	dolaska)	
dabome	of course (20)	dolina	valley
dalek	distant	domaći	local, homemade (6)
dama	lady (6)	donekle	up to a point
dan	day (1)	don(ijeti) (pf.	to bring, carry (7)
danas	today (9)	donesem	
datum	date (13)	donositi (imp.)	
desni	right (hand) (8)	dosta	enough (15)
desiti se (pf.,	to happen (18)	dovoljan G	sufficient (6)
dešavati se,		dovoljna)	
imp.)			
dinja	melon (17)		
dio (G dijela;	part (16)		
E deo, dela)			
dirati (imp.,	to touch (18)		
dirnuti, pf.)			

doživjeti (pf. doživim, doživljavati, imp.)	to experience (18)	godina	year (11)
drag	dear (3)	gore	up, above, upstairs (8)
drago mi je	I am delighted (1)	gospodin	Mr, gentleman (1)
dragocjen	precious, valuable	gospođa	Mrs, lady
drugačiji, drukčiji	different	gost	guest, visitor (7)
drugi	second (3), other (13)	govor	speech, talk (7)
društvo	company (16), to keep some- one company	ni govora!	out of the question!
praviti nekome društvo		govoriti (imp.)	to speak (1)
dućan (C)	shop	grad	own (4)
dug	long	gradić	small town
duša	soul; dear (3)	granica	border, limit
dvokrevetna soba	double room (5)	grmljavina	thunder (19)
džemper	jumper, jersey (14)	grožđe (coll.)	grapes (17)
Engleska	England	gubiti (imp. izgubiti)	to lose
Englez, Engleskinja	Englishman, English woman	gumen	rubber
eventualno evo (+ G)	perhaps (15) here is, here are (4)	gust	dense, thick (18)
formular	form (12)	gužvati (imp.; izgužvati)	to crumple, crease (14)
frižider	refrigerator (9)	hala	hall (12)
gd(j)e	where (6)	haljina	dress (3)
gladan, gladna	hungry (2)	hauba	bonnet (car) (16)
glava	head	hlače (C)	trousers, slacks (14)
glavobolja	headache	hlad	shade (11)
gledati (imp.)	to look (+ dir. obj. gledam film) (2)	hladan, hladna	cold
		hladno mi je	I am cold
		hodati (imp.)	to walk (9)
		hodnik	corridor (2)
		Hrvat, Hrvatica	Croatian man, woman
		Hrvatska	Croatia
		hrvatski	Croatian (1)
		hvala	thank you (3)
		hvala lijepa (S lepo)	thank you very much
		i	and, too (2)
		ići (idem)	to go (2)

igrati se (imp.)	to play	jastuk	pillow, cushion
imati (imp.)	to have (7)	jedva	hardly
(neg. nemati)		jelovnik	menu (7)
imati pravo	to be right (2)	jer	because (5)
inače	otherwise (13)	jesen (f.)	autumn (19)
inozemstvo (C)	abroad	jesti (imp. jedem ,	to eat
(S inostranstvo)		pojesti (pf.)	
interesirati (imp.)	to interest (13)	jezero	lake (15)
interesirati se za + A	to be interested in . . .	jezik	tongue, language (1)
(E interesovati)		još	still, again, more (5)
isplatiti se (pf.)	to be worthwhile (15)	jučer (E juče)	yesterday (9)
ispričati (pf., ispričavati imp.)	to narrate, to excuse	jug	south (8)
istok	east (8)	Jugosloven	Yugoslav
izaći (pf. izađem)	to go out	(Jugoslovenka)	
izb(j)eći (pf. izb(j)egnem)	to avoid, escape (16)	juha (S supa)	soup (7)
izb(j)egavati (imp.)		jutros	this morning (9)
izbor	choice (14)	južni	southern (15)
izgubiti (pf., gubiti imp.)	to lose	kabina	booth (12)
izlaziti (imp.)	<i>see</i> izaći	kad(a)	when (2)
izlog	shop window, display	kad god	whenever (7)
izložiti (pf., izlagati)	to display	kakav, kakva	what kind of (3)
iznajmiti (pf., iznajmljivati)	to rent out (14)	kako	how
(imp.)		kako da ne	of course (7)
izraz	expression	kamion	lorry
izv(j)estan	certain (19)	kamo	where (with motion) (4)
(izv(j)esna)		kao	as
izvoli, izvolite	please, help yourself (5)	karta	map, ticket (13)
izvrstan (izvrsna)	excellent (7)	kasa	till (17)
jak	strong	kasni	late (11)
jako	very (2)	kat (S sprat)	floor, storey (5)
jakna	jacket (14)	kava (S kafa , B kahva)	coffee
		kavana (S kafana)	cafe, restaurant (8)
		kazalište (S pozorište)	theatre (8)
		kćer (f.) and kći (f.)	daughter (<i>see</i> Appendix 1)
		(S ćerka)	

kiša	rain (19)	kupanje	bathing (20)
kišovit	rainy	kupiti (pf.),	to buy (17)
ključ	key (5)	kupovati (imp.)	
knjiga	book	kupovina	shopping (17)
kod (+G)	at, near, at the house of (5)	lak	easy (4)
koji	which, what, who (7)	lakat	elbow
kolač	cake (17)	lavabo	washbasin (5)
koliko	how much, how many (7)	ležati (imp., ležim)	to lie, recline (20)
kolodvor (C) (S stanica)	station (4)	li	interrog. part. (1)
kolotečina	routine	lice	face (23)
komad	piece, (theatre) play (13)	liječnik (S lekar)	doctor (23)
komotan, komotna	comfortable	l(ij)ek	medicine (23)
konzerva	tin (17)	l(ij)ep	beautiful, nice
koštati (imp.)	to cost (12)	l(ij)evi	left (5)
kosa	hair	liker	liqueur (7)
košulja	shirt (14)	lopta	ball (20)
kovčeg (S kofer)	suitcase	lozovača	grape brandy (9)
koža	skin, leather (11)	lubenica	water melon (17)
kraj	end (7); area, region	lupati (imp.), lupiti, lupnuti (pf.)	to bang, knock (16)
krasan, krasna	beautiful (8)	luka	harbour (21)
krastavac (G krastavca)	cucumber (17)	l(j)epota	beauty
krcat	full, packed (14)	l(j)eto	summer
krevet	bed (5)	l(j)eti	in summer (19)
kroz (+A)	through (2)	l(j)etovanje	summer holiday (3)
kruh (S hleb)	bread	ljubazan (ljubazna)	pleasant, kind (2)
kuća	house	ljut	angry (18)
kuhati (imp.), skuhati (pf.) (S kuvati)	to cook	madrac	mattress (21)
kuhinja	kitchen (6)	majica	undershirt, T shirt (14)
kupaona (S kupatilo)	bathroom (5)	majka	mother
kupati (se) (imp.), to bath, bathe okupati (pf.)	(19)	malen	small (10)
		mali	small (6)
		malo	a little, a bit (1)
		manji	comp. of mali (12)

maramica	handkerchief, scarf	more	sea (4)
marelica	apricot (17) (also kajsija)	motor	engine (16)
marka	stamp (12)	možda	perhaps (2)
mast (f.)	fat; masni (adj.) (23)	mrtav (mrtva)	dead (16)
međunarodni	international (12)	muž	husband (10)
međutim	however (15)	na	on, onto
meso	meat (7)	nabaviti (pf.),	to acquire,
metnuti (pf.),	to put, place	nabavljati	purchase (20)
metati ,	(14)	(imp.)	
mećem (imp.)		način	way, means (18)
m(ij)ešan	mixed (7)	na taj način	in that way
milo	<i>see</i> mio ; milo mi je I am glad (1)	naći (pf., nađem)	to find (17)
mio (mila)	dear, sweet	nalaziti (imp.)	
mir	peace	nadati se (imp.)	to hope (8)
misлити (imp.),	to think (3)	nakit	jewellery, ornaments (22)
pomisliti (pf.)		nakon (+ G)	after (13)
m(j)esto	place (7)	nalaziti se	<i>see</i> naći , to be situated (8)
mlad	young (6)	nam(j)eravati	to intend, plan (4)
mladić	young man (6)	(imp.), nam(j)- eriti (pf.)	
mnogi	much, many	napraviti (pf.),	to make (14)
mnogo	a lot (+ G) (3)	praviti (imp.)	
moći (imp. and	to be able (2)	naraštaj	generation (20)
pf.; mogu ,		narav (f.)	disposition, character (23)
možeš, oni		naravno	of course (9)
mogu; mogao,		naročito	particularly
mogla)		nasloniti (se)	to lean (21)
modrica	bruise (18)	(pf.), naslanjati	
mogućnost (f.)	possibility	se (imp.)	
po mogućnosti	if possible (13)	naš, naša,	our (4)
moj, moja,	my (1)	naši , etc.	
moji , etc.		navika	habit (24)
molba	request, favour (15)	navikao (p. part.	accustomed (f.
moliti (imp.),	to pray, ask (a	of navikati)	navikla) (21)
zamoliti (pf.)	favour) (7)	ne	no (neg. part.) (2)
molim	please (5)	nebo	sky (20)
morati (imp.)	to have to, must	nećak	nephew (10)

nedaleko	not far (4) (+ od + G)	objasniti (pf.), objašnjavati (imp.)	to explain (10)
negd(j)e	somewhere (8)	oblak	cloud (19)
neki	some (6)	oblačno	cloudy
nekoliko	several, a few (4)	od (+ G)	from away (4)
nemati	(neg. of imati (imp.)) (3)	odavde	from here (8)
neodoljiv	irresistible (21)	odavno	a long time ago, for a long time (9)
neposredan, neposredna	direct, immediate	od(ij)elo	clothing, suit (14)
neprijatan, neprijatna	unpleasant	odgovarati (imp.), odgovoriti (pf.)	to answer (19)
nesreća	misfortune, accident (18)	odlučiti (se) (pf.), odlučivati (se) (imp.)	to decide (11)
nestrpljiv	impatient (12)	odgojen	brought up (23)
nešto	something (2)	odmah	immediately (12)
netko (S neko)	someone (3)	odmor	rest
nikad(a)	never (4)	odmoriti se (pf.), odmarati se (imp.)	to rest (9)
nikad se	you never	odnos	relationship, attitude (10)
ne zna	know	odrastati (pf.) odrastem) odrastati (imp.)	to grow up (10) odrasao, odrasla past part.
njegov	his	određen (from odrediti)	definite (15)
njen, njezin	her(s)	odspavati (pf.)	to take a nap (21)
n(j)ežan, n(j)ežna	tender, soft (11)	odsutnost (f.)	absence (21)
njihov	their(s)	odvesti (pf.) odvezem) odvoziti (imp.)	to drive, take (15)
noć (f.)	night	odvojak	fork (road)
noćenje	spending the night (14)	odvojiti (pf.), odvajati (imp.)	to separate, divide (14)
nogomet (C)	football		
nositi (imp.)	to carry, wear (3)		
novine (f. pl.)	newspaper (13)		
obala	shore, coast, bank (19)		
obaviti (pf.), obavljati (imp.)	to carry out, perform (12)		
obično	usually (12)		
obilazak (from obilaziti to go round)	visit (15)		
obitelj (f.) (S porodica)	family (10)		

ogledati se (imp.)	to be reflected	otok	island (4)
okrugao, okrugla	round (17)	otplaćivati (imp.),	to pay back, off
oluja	storm (19)	otplatiti (pf.)	
omogućavati	to enable, make	otputovati (pf.)	to set off (11)
(imp.),	possible	otruga (E pozadi)	behind (18)
omogućiti (pf.)		otvoren	open (12)
omotnica	envelope (20)	ovaj, ova, ovo	this (3)
(S koverat)		ovamo	over here (7)
on	he	ovd(j)e	here (2)
ona	she (1)	ovisno	depending
ondje	over there (6)		(+ o + P)
opasan, opasna	dangerous (23)	ovisi	it depends (S
operirati (imp.	to operate on		zavisno, zavisi
and pf.)	(23)		od + G) (13)
opisati (pf.),	to describe (22)	ozbiljan	serious
opisivati (imp.)		(ozbiljna)	
oporavak (G	recovery,	oženiti se (pf.),	to get married
oporavka)	convalescence	ženiti se (imp.)	(10)
	(23)	padati (imp.),	to fall (19)
oprezan, oprezna	careful (23)	pasti, padnem	
oprostiti (pf.),	to forgive (3)	(pf.)	
opraštat (imp.)		pakiranje (S	packing (14)
orah	walnut (7)	pakovanje)	
ormar	wardrobe,	palačinka	pancake (7)
	cupboard (5)	paprika	capsicum,
osim + G	apart from		pepper (17)
osim toga	apart from	par	pair, couple
	that, besides	bračni par	married
	(2)		couple (11)
ostajati (imp.),	to remain (4)	par kilometara	a few km.(16)
ostati (pf.)		parkirati (se)	to park (9)
ostali	remaining;	pas	dog
	others (17)	pasoš (C:	passport
ostatak	remainder (21)	putovnica)	
ostaviti (pf.),	to leave,	pasta	paste
ostavljati	abandon (22)	pasta za zube	toothpaste
(imp.)			(20)
osv(j)ežiti se	to refresh	pašteta	paté (17)
(pf.), osv(j)e-	oneself	paziti (imp.)	to watch, take
žavati se (imp.)			care (16)
otac	father (G oca)	peglati (imp.),	to iron (14)
	(10)	ispeglati (pf.)	

pejzaž	landscape (16)	položaj	position (10)
p(j)ena	foam	pomalo	a little, now and then
p(j)ena za brijanje	shaving cream (20)	pomoć (f.)	help (12)
piće	drink (6)	pomoći (pf.)	to help (5)
pisac	writer (G pisca) (13)	pomognem), pomagati (imp. pomažem) +D	
piti (imp. pijem), to drink		ponekad	sometimes (2)
popiti (pf.)		pon(ij)eti (pf. ponesem)	to take (along), carry off (14)
p(j)esma	poem, song (20)	ponovo	again (16)
p(j)esnik	poet (20)	popeti (pf. popnem), peti, penjati (imp.)	to climb, lift (8)
p(j)ešice	on foot (5)	popiti (pf.)	<i>see piti</i>
plaća	pay, salary (24)	popraviti (pf.), popravljati (imp.)	to mend, correct (17)
plaćati (imp.), platiti (pf.)	to pay (15)	popunjavati (imp.), popuniti (pf.)	to fill up (21)
planina	mountain (23)	posao (G posla)	work (12)
plav	blue, blond (22)	poslovno	on business (2)
plin	gas (24)	poseban , posebna	special (13)
plodan, plodna	fertile	pos(j)editi (pf.)	<i>see s(j)editi</i>
početak (G početka)	beginning (13)	posjet (S poseta)	visit (9)
poći (pf., pođem), polaziti (imp.)	to go, set off (9)	pos(j)etilac (G pos(j)etioca)	visitor
pod (+ I)	under (22)	pos(j)etiti (pf.), pos(j)ećivati (imp.)	to visit (4)
podići (pf., podignem), podizati (imp.)	to lift, raise (16)	poslati (pf. pošaljem) slati (imp.)	to send (12)
podnositi (imp.)	bear, support (11)	poslužiti (se) (pf.), posluživati (oneself) <i>see</i> (se) (imp.) <i>also</i> služiti (nekoga nečim)	to serve
područje	region		
pogled	look, view (5)		
pogotovu	especially (24)		
pojesti (pf.), jesti, jedem (imp.)	to eat (up) (19)		
pokazati (pf.), pokazivati (imp.)	to show (6)		
pokušati (pf.), pokušavati (imp.)	to attempt, try (13)		
polazak	departure (15)		

postajati (imp.),	to become (24)	prebaciti (pf.),	to throw over,
postati (pf.)		prebacivati	give a lift (16)
posuditi (pf.),	to lend	(imp.)	
posuđivati (nekome) (16)		predaleko	too far (2)
(imp.)		predati (pf.),	to hand over
od nekoga	to borrow	predavati	(12)
pošta	post, post office	(imp.)	
	(12)	predgrade	suburbs
potpuno	completely (16)	predjelo	hors d'oeuvre
potreban,	necessary (16)	(7)	
potrebna		predlagati (imp.),	to suggest (7)
povrće (coll.)	vegetables (17)	predložiti (pf.)	
povr(ij)editi	to injure, wound	predstava	performance
(pf.), povr(ij)-	(23)	(13)	
editivati (imp.)		predstaviti (pf.),	to present,
povr(i)eđen	injured (18)	predstavljati	introduce (9)
pozdraviti (pf.),	to greet (21);	(imp.)	
pozdravljati	(se): to say	pregledati (imp.	to examine (3)
(imp.)	goodbye	and pf.), also	
pozivati (imp.),	to invite (6)	pregledavati	(imp.)
pozvati (pf.)			
poznavati (imp.),	to know, be	prekjučer (S	the day before
poznati (pf.)	acquainted	prekjuče)	yesterday (9)
	with (10)	prekosutra	the day after
prašak (G	powder,		tomorrow (11)
praška)	medicine (23)	prekrasan,	beautiful (6)
prašina	dust (18)	prekrasna	
prati (imp.	to wash	prelazak (G	crossing
perem),		prelaska)	
oprati (pf.)		prema (+ D)	towards (8)
pratiti (imp.),	to accompany	prenoćiti (pf.),	to spend the
ispratiti (pf.)		noćiti (imp.)	night (15)
pravac (G	direction	preporučēn	recommended,
pravca)			registered (12)
prav	straight	preporučivati	to recommend
pravi	real, right (9)	(imp.), prep-	(7)
praviti (imp.),	to make (11)	poručiti (pf.)	
napraviti (pf.)		prethodan,	preceding,
pravo	right, correctly	prethodna	previous (24)
imati pravo	to be right (2)	pret(j)ecati	to overtake (18)
prazan, prazna	empty	(imp., pret(j)ečem)	
praznina	emptiness (21)	(preteći pf.)	

previše	too much, excessively	prskati (imp.),	to sprinkle,
prevruć	too hot (16)	poprskati (pf.)	splash (21)
preživjeti (pf.),	to survive (11)	pršut	smoked ham (prosciutto) (17)
preživljavati (imp.)		prtljaga (S	luggage (3)
prijatelj	friend	prtljag)	
prijaviti (pf.),	to announce, declare (3)	prvi	first (8)
prijavljivati (imp.)		ptica	bird (24)
pr(ij)e	earlier; + G before (9)	puhati (imp., pušem), puhnuti (pf.)	to blow (19)
pr(ij)edlog	proposal, suggestion	pun	full (6)
prilično	quite, considerably (8)	puno	much, many (9)
prilika	opportunity, cir- cumstance (13)	pušiti (imp.), popušiti (pf.)	to smoke (2)
priroda	nature	put	journey (9); time (17)
privikavati se (imp.), privik- nuti se (pf.)	to become accustomed	putanja	track
privlačan, privlačna	attractive (19)	putnik	traveller (1)
priznavati (imp.),	to admit, confess	putovati (imp. putujem)	to travel (2)
priznati (pf.)	(24)	putovnica (C)	passport
prljav	dirty (14)	račun	account, bill (24)
probati (imp. and pf.)	to try (2)	raditi (imp.)	to work, do
prodati (pf.),	to sell	radostan, radosna	joyous (18)
prodavati (imp.)		rajčica	tomato (7) (also paradajz)
prodavačica	salesgirl (20)	rakija	brandy (9)
prolaziti (imp.),	to pass by	rani	early (11)
proći (pf.)		raspitati se (pf.),	to enquire (21)
prol(j)eće	spring (19)	raspitivati se (imp.)	
proplanak	clearing	rasti (imp.,	to grow (24)
prospekt	brochure	rastem), porasti (pf.)	
prostran	spacious (6)	razan	various, usu. pl.
prov(j)eriti (pf.),	to confirm, check (23)	razni (7)	
prov(j)eravati (imp.)		razbol(j)eti se (pf.), razbol(j)- evati se (imp.)	to fall ill (15)
prozor	window (2)		

razgledavati	to view, visit	rođendan	birthday (rođen:
(imp.),	(22)		past part.
razgledati (pf.)			passive of
razglednica	picture postcard	roman	roditi (12)
	(20)	roštilj	novel (20)
razmisлити (pf.),	to reflect, think	rub	grill (19)
razmišljati	over (11)	rublje (coll.)	edge (16)
(imp.)		donje rublje	linen, clothes
razum(j)eti	to understand (1)		underwear
(imp. and pf.)		ručak (G ručka)	(14)
also razum(ij)		ružičast	lunch (17)
evati (imp.)		s, sa + G	pink (14)
razuman,	sensible (15)		from (8), + I
razumna			with (8)
razvedriti (pf.),	to clear up (20)	sačuvati (pf.),	to preserve
razvedravati		čuvati (imp.)	
(imp.)		sad, sada	now (3)
razvesti se (pf.),	to divorce (10)	sad ću . . .	I'll just . . .
razvoditi se	(od nekoga)		(16)
(imp.)		salama	salami (17)
rećepcija	(hotel) lobby,	salata	salad, lettuce (7)
	desk (6)	sam	alone (1)
reći (pf., rečem;	to say, tell (6)	samo čas	just a minute
part. rekao)			(5)
red	order, u redu in	samoposluživanje	self-service,
	order, all right	(S samoposluga)	supermarket
	(5)		(17)
riba	fish; riblji (adj.)	sav, sva	all, whole
	(7)	pr(ij)e svega	above all (16)
r(ij)eka	river	sav(j)et	advice, counsel
r(ij)edak,	rare (10)		(11)
r(ij)etka		savršen	perfect (23)
r(j)ečnik	dictionary	se (refl. particle)	'oneself'
	(20)	servis	service station,
rod	kin (10)		garage (16)
roditi (pf.),	to bear;	sestra	sister (10)
rađati (imp.)		sestrična	niece (daughter
roditi se	to be born		of sister)
	(13)	sići (pf., sidem)	to come down,
rođak	relation, rodica	silaziti (imp.)	get off (6)
	(S rođakinja)	siguran, sigurna	certain (12)
	(10)	sin	son (4)

sitniš	small coins, change (22)	služiti (imp.), odslužiti (pf.)	to serve (6)
s(j)ećati se (imp.), s(j)etiti se (pf.) + G	to remember (7)	smatrati (imp.)	to consider, believe (6)
s(j)editi (imp.)	to sit, be sitting	s(ij)ed	grey-haired (23)
s(j)esti (pf.)	to sit down (7)	sm(j)enjivati se (imp.), smenjiti se (pf.)	to change places, replace
s(j)ednem) s(j)edati (imp.)		smetati (imp.)	to disturb, bother (11)
s(j)ever	north (8)	smiriti (se) (pf.), smirivati (se) (imp.)	to soothe, calm (3)
skakati (imp.) skačem), skočiti (pf.)	to jump, dive (21)	sm(j)ena	shift (24)
skrenuti (pf.), skretati, skrećem (imp.)	to turn (8)	sm(j)eštaj	lodging (11)
skup	expensive (12)	smokva	fig (17)
sladak, slatka	sweet (7)	snaga	strength, energy (16)
sladoled	ice cream (led 'ice') (17)	sn(ij)eg	snow (19)
slagati se (imp.) slažem se), složiti se (pf.)	to agree (7); to get on (10)	soba	room
slamnat	straw (11)	sopstven	one's own (21)
slap/vodopad	waterfall	spajati (imp.) spajem), spojiti (pf.)	to link
slaviti (imp.), proslaviti (pf.)	to celebrate (7)	spavaća soba	bedroom (6)
sličan, slična	similar (16)	spavati (imp.)	to sleep (2)
sl(ij)edeći	following (16)	spreman, spremna	ready (6)
slika	picture (6)	spremati (se) (imp.), spremiti (se) (pf.)	to get ready, prepare (4)
slikovit	picturesque	sreća	fortune, luck, happiness (13)
slivati (imp.), sliti (pf.)	to pour	stajati (imp.)	to stand (8)
slobodan, slobodna	free (7)	stojim)	
sломiti (pf.), slamati (imp.)	to break (18)	staklen	glass (staklo) (12)
slučaj	chance	stalno	constantly (11)
slučajno ni slučajno	by chance (17) not on your life!	stan	flat, apartment (6)

stanovati (imp.)	to reside, dwell	svatko (G	everyone, each
stanujem)	(4)	svakoga)	(4)
stati (pf.)	to stand up, get	sve	everything (<i>see</i>
stanem) stajati	up; to stop; to	svejedno	sav) (5)
(stajem, imp.)	cost (16)	svidati se (imp.),	all the same (7)
staviti (pf.),	to place, put (9)	svid(j)eti se	to please; sviđa
stavljati (imp.)		(pf.)	mi se film 'I
staza	path		like the film'
stepenica	step (15)		(7)
stići (pf.)	to arrive,	sv(i)etao,	light, bright (6)
stignem),	manage (4)	sv(ij)etla	
stizati, stizem		sv(j)etlost	light
(imp.)		sv(j)edok	witness (18)
stol (S sto)	table (7)	sv(j)ež	fresh cool (14)
stolac (S stolica)	chair	svoj	one's own (4)
strana	side (5)	svratiti (pf.),	to drop in (23)
stranac (G	foreigner (22)	svraćati (imp.)	
stranca)		svuda, svugd(j)e	everywhere (21)
stric	uncle (10)	šaliti se (imp.),	to joke (10)
strm	steep (8)	našaliti se (pf.)	
strog	stern, severe	šalter	counter, window
	(24)		(12)
struja	current,	šetati (se) (imp.),	to (go for a)
	electricity (24)	prošetati (pf.)	walk (8)
stupanj	degree (19)	škoditi (imp.),	to harm (+ D)
(S stepen)		naškoditi (pf.)	(19)
stvar (f.)	thing (3)	škola	school
sudariti se (pf.),	to collide, crash	šljivovica	plum brandy (2)
sudarati se	(18)	šminka	make-up (22)
(imp.)		što	what (for decl.,
suh	dry (17)		<i>see</i> 17) (3)
suknja	skirt (14)	šuma	forest, wood
sunčan	sunny (16)		(18)
suprug	husband	tad(a)	then, at that
supruga	wife (5)		time (5)
sus(j)ed	neighbour	taj, ta, to	that (6)
sus(j)edstvo	neighbour-	tako	so, in such a
	hood (17)		way (3)
svakako	certainly (4)	također (S	likewise (1)
svaki	every (3)	takođe)	
svako dobro	all the best (4)	tamo	there (6)
svakodnevni	everyday (24)	taška (S tašna)	handbag (22)

tek	just (13)	ući (pf. uđem)	to enter + u +
teško	<i>see težak</i>	ulaziti (imp.)	A (9)
teta (C), tetka (S)	aunt (17)	udariti (se) (pf.), udarati (imp.)	to strike, knock (18)
težak, teška	difficult, heavy (11)	udati se (pf.), udavati se (imp.)	to marry (of women) (10)
ticati se (imp.)	to concern	udata (past passive part.)	married
što se mene tiče	as far as I am concerned (9)	udoban, udobna	comfortable (6)
tiskati (imp.), tisnuti (pf.)	to press, to print; tiska the press	ugao (G ugla)	corner (7)
(S štampati , štampa)		uglavnom	on the whole (11)
tko	who (for decl. <i>see</i> 17) (3)	ugodan, ugodna	pleasant (4)
to	that (<i>see taj</i>) (3)	ukupno	altogether (12)
toliko	so much, so many	ukus	taste
topao, topla	warm (7)	ukusan, ukusna	tasty (7)
torba	bag (3)	ulica	street (8)
trajati	to last, continue (17)	ulje	oil (also zejtin) (20)
traperice (S farmerke)	jeans (22)	um(j)eren	moderate, modest (19)
tražiti (imp.), potražiti (pf.)	to seek, look for (17)	um(ij)ešati se (imp.), um(ij)ešiti se (pf.)	to involve oneself (16)
trčati (imp. trčim)	to run (18)	umoran, umorna	tired (9)
trebati (imp.), zatrebati (pf.)	to need (5); also used impersonally (partic. in S)	umr(ij)eti (pf. umrem), umirati (umirem, imp.)	to die (past part. umro, umrla) (13)
tr(ij)esak	bang (18)	unutra	inside (16)
trg	square (8)	unutrašnjost	interior, inland
trokut	triangle (17)	uopće (E uopšte)	in general, at all (7)
tu	here (6)	upaliti (pf.), upaljivati (imp.)	to ignite (16)
tuš	shower (5)	uplašiti (se) (pf.), plašiti (se) (imp.)	to frighten, be frightened (18)
tvoj	your(s)		
tvrd	hard (17)		
učiti (imp.), naučiti (pf.)	to learn; to teach		

upoznati (pf.), upoznavati (imp.)	to meet, get to know (1)	vaspitan (S)	brought up; <i>see</i> odgojen (23)
upravo	just, exactly (21)	važ	your(s) (3)
uskliknuti (pf.)	to exclaim, also uzviknuti (18)	važan, važna	important (12)
uskoro	soon (5)	večer (f., G večeri)	evening, also m., esp. in greeting: dobar večer (S veče n.)
usluga	favour (23)	večera	dinner, evening meal (6)
uspinjača	cable car (8)	večeras	this evening (7)
usp(j)ešan, usp(j)ešna	successful (13); usp(j)eh success	već	already (9)
usp(j)eti (pf.), usp(ij)evati (imp.)	to succeed (9)	većina	majority (24)
usporiti (pf.), usporavati (imp.)	to slow down (16)	veličanstven	magnificent
ustanoviti (pf.), ustanovljivati (imp.)	to establish, ascertain (22)	veliki	large (3) (def. form is usually used)
uv(ij)ek	always (3)	vi	you (formal and plural) (1)
uz + A	up, alongside (7)	vid(j)eti (imp. and pf. vidim)	to see (3)
uzak, uska	narrow (14)	vidati (imp.)	to see regularly, repeatedly (10)
uzbuđen	excited (15)	vino	wine (7)
uzbuđenje	excitement (16)	više	more (comp. of mного) (6)
uzeti (pf., uzmem), uzimati (imp.)	to take (7)	vitak, vitka	slender (23)
uživati (imp.)	to enjoy oneself (u nečemu to enjoy some- thing) (16)	vjerojatno (S verovatno)	probably (15)
vaditi (imp.), izvaditi (pf.)	to take out, remove (14)	v(j)erovati (imp.), pov(j)erovati (pf.)	to believe (nekome) (11)
vinska karta	wine list (7)	v(j)etar (G v(j)etra)	wind (19)
valjda	presumably (11)	vlak (S voz)	train (2)
vani	outside (19)	voće (coll.)	fruit (17)
vanredan, vanredna	out of the ordinary, special (13)	voditi (imp.), povesti (pf.)	to take, lead (13)
		vodopad	waterfall

vol (S vo)	ox (19)	zagrljaj	embrace
volan	steering wheel (18)	zahvalan, zahvalna	grateful (21)
volja	will (24)	zaista	really (19)
vol(j)eti (imp. volim)	to love (2)	zaljubiti se (pf.), zaljubljevati se (imp.)	to fall in love
vozilo	vehicle (18)	zaljubljen	in love (10)
voziti (se) (imp.), povesti, povezem (pf.)	to drive (2)	zamisliti (pf.), zamišljati (imp.)	to imagine (6)
voznja	driving	zam(j)esiti (pf.), m(j)esiti (imp.)	to mix, knead (23)
vraćati (se) (imp.), vratiti (se) (pf.)	to return (11)	zanimati (imp.)	to interest (13)
vrat	neck	zanimljiv	interesting (8)
vrata (n. pl.)	door (3)	zapad	west (8)
vrećica	bag	zaposlen	employed (24)
najlon vrećica	plastic bag	zapravo	in fact, really (17)
vr(ij)editi (imp.)	to be worth	zašto	why (11)
vr(ij)ednost (f.)	value (22)	zateći (pf.), zaticati (imp.)	to find, catch (21)
vr(ij)eme (G vremena)	time; weather (4)	zatim	then, next (4)
na vr(ij)eme	on time (9)	zato što	because
s vremena na vr(ij)eme	from time to time (9)	zaustavljati (se) (imp.), zaustaviti (se) (pf.)	to stop, hold up (14)
vrlo	very (2)	zaustavna traka	hard shoulder (road)
vruć	hot (11)	zauzet	occupied, busy (7)
vrućina	heat (11)	zavoj	bend (18)
zabilježiti (pf.), bilježiti (imp.) (S zabeležiti)	to make a note (15)	završiti (pf.), završavati (imp.)	to finish, complete (17)
zabraniti (pf.), zabranjivati (imp.)	to forbid	zbilja	truly, honestly (10)
zadovoljan, zadovoljna	pleased, satisfied (6)	zbirka	collection (20)
zadovoljstvo	pleasure (24)	zdravlje	health (23)
zadržati (se) (pf.), zadržavati (se) (imp.)	to keep, hold up (11)	zdravo (S)	hello (also goodbye) (6)
zagrliti (pf.), grliti (imp.)	to embrace, hug (23)		

zelen	green (7)	žalost	regret; na žalost
zgodan, zgodna	suitable, pretty, attractive (7)		unfortunately (1)
zima	winter; zimi in winter (15)	žao mi je	I am sorry (20)
značiti	to mean (imp.) (10)	žar	embers; na žaru grilled (over an open fire) (7)
znak	sign (16)	žel(j)eti (imp.)	to want, desire
znamenitost	sight, thing of interest (8)	želim ,	(2)
znati (imp.)	to know (3)	požel(j)eti (pf.)	
zora	dawn (24); u zoru at dawn	žena	woman, wife (1)
zračna luka (C)	airport	žestok	severe, strong (9)
(B and S: aerodrom)		žilet	razor blade (20)
zrakoplov (C)	aeroplane	živ	alive, lively (13)
(B and S: avion)		živ(j)eti (imp.)	to live
zvati (imp.)	to call, invite;	živim)	
zovem ,	(se) be called	živopisan	picturesque
pozvati (pf.)	(1)	životinja	animal
zvoniti (imp.),	to ring (6);	život	life
pozvoniti (pf.)	zvono bell	žuriti (se)	to hurry (15)
zvuk	sound (16)	(imp.), požuriti (pf.)	
		žut	yellow (14)

English–Croatian and Serbian glossary

to be able	moći (imp. and pf.; mogu, možeš, oni mogu; mogao, mogla)	bag	torba ; handbag taška (C), tašna (S)
abroad	inozemstvo (C), inostranstvo (S)	to bathe	kupati se (imp.), okupati se
to accept	primati (imp.), primiti	bathroom	kupaona (C), kupatilo (S)
accident	nesreća	beautiful	l(ij)ep, prekrasan
aeroplane	avion (B and S) zrakoplov (C)	because	zato što, jer
after	posl(ij)e (+ G)	bed	krevet
afternoon	posl(ij)e podne (G posl(j)-epodneva)	bed linen	posteljina
although	mada, iako	beer	pivo
always	uv(ij)ek	before	pr(ij)e (+ G); ranije
and	i (sometimes a if there is a slight element of contrast)	to begin	počinjati (imp., počinjem), početi (pf. počnem)
arrival	dolazak	behind	za (+ I), iza (+ G); otraga , adv, (C), pozadi (S)
to arrive	dolaziti (imp.), doći (dođem; došao)	to believe	v(j)erovati (imp., v(j)erujem) +D
to ask	(a question) pitati (imp.); (a favour) moliti (imp.), zamoliti	big	veliki
		bill	račun
		birthday	rođendan
		black	crn

boat	brod; čamac (small motor or rowing boat)	to celebrate certain chair	slaviti (imp.) siguran, sigurna stolac (C), stolica (S)
bonnet (of car)	hauba	cheap	jeftin
book	knjiga	cheese	sir
Bosnia	Bosna	chemist	apoteka
Bosnian person	Bosanac, Bosanka; also Bošnjak for Muslim inhabitant of Bosnia; language bosanski	child choice cinema	d(j)ete (G d(j)eteta; pl. d(j)eca, f. sg. takes pl. verb)
bread	kruh (C), hleb (S); (also hljeb in ijekavian areas)	clean clear clinic clothes	izbor kino (C), bioskop (S) čist jasan, jasna ambulanta od(j)eca; rublje underwear, washing (both collec. nouns)
breakfast	doručak (doručkovati, doručkujem: 'to have b'.)	coast coffee	obala kava (C), kafa (S), kahva (B)
to bring	(carry) donositi (imp.), don(ij)eti; dovoditi (imp.), dovesti	cold to come	hladan, hladna; I am cold hladno mi je dolaziti (imp.), doći (dođem)
bus	autobus	comfortable	udoban, udobna
busy	zauzet, u poslu	completely	potpuno
cafe	kavana (C), kafana (S); also kafić	Croat (person) Croatia crossroads	Hrvat, Hrvatica Hrvatska raskršće (C); raskrsnica (S)
to call	zvati (zovem); be called zvati se (imp.) zovem se	dangerous date daughter	opasan, opasna datum kćer, kći (see Appendix, section 1), ćerka (S)
car	automobil, kola (n. pl.)		
to be careful	paziti (imp.)		
to carry	nositi (imp.)	day	dan

dear	drag; mio, mila	envelope	omotnica, (S)
to decide	odlučiti (se) (pf.) odlučivati (se)	evening	koverat večer (f.), (S) veče (n.)
I'm delighted	drago mi je	excellent	izvrstan, izvrsna
to depart	odlaziti (imp.), otići (odem)	excuse me	oprostite
departure	odlazak (G odlaska)	expensive	skup
dictionary	r(j)ečnik	to explain	objašnjavati (imp.), objasniti
difficult	težak, teška	family	obitelj (f.), (S) porodica
dinner	večera	far	dalek
direction	pravac (G pravca)	father	otac (G oca; pl. očevi)
dirty	prljav	fast	brz
divorced	razveden	to find	nalaziti (imp.) naći
doctor	liječnik, lekar (S)	to finish	završiti (pf.)
dog	pas (G psa)	first	prvi
door	vrata (n. pl.)	floor (storey)	kat, (S) sprat
double room	dvokrevetna soba	food	hrana, jelo (prepared dish)
dress	haljina	football	nogomet
drink	piće	foreigner	stranac, strankinja
to drink	piti (imp. pijem), popiti	to forget	zaboravljati (imp.), zaboraviti
dry	suh; to dry sušiti (imp.)	friend	prijatelj, prijateljica
early	rani	in front of	pred (+ I), ispred (+G)
East	istok, istočni (adj.)	fruit	voće (n., coll.)
easy	lak	garden	vrt, (S) bašta
to eat	jesti (imp. jedem), pojesti	to get on (well)	slagati se (imp.; slažem se)
end	kraj	girl	d(j)evojka
engine	motor	to give	davati (imp., dajem), dati (dam)
England	Engleska		
English	engleski; English person Englez, Engleskinja		
enough	dosta		
entrance hall	predsoblje		

to go	ići (imp. and pf. idem)		topla I am hot toplo mi je
gladly	rado	how much	koliko
good	dobar, dobra	hungry	gladan, gladna
good looking	zgodan, zgodna	to hurt	boljeti (imp. bolim ; usually used in the 3rd pers.: boli me glava 'I have a headache')
grammar book	gramatika		
grapes	grožđe (n., coll.)		
to greet	pozdravljati (imp.), pozdraviti		
guest	gost		
hair	kosa	husband	suprug, muž
happy	sretan, sretna ; (S) srećan, srećna	I	ja
		ice cream	sladoled
		if	ako
to have	imati (imp.)	immediately	odmah
to have to	morati (imp.)	impossible	nemoguć
he	on	in	u (+ P), into u + A
head	glava		
to hear	čuti (imp. čujem)	injured	pozl(ij)eden (C); povr(ij)eden (S)
help	pomoć (f.)		
to help	pomagati (imp. pomažem), pomoći (pomognem) +D	inside	unutra
		to interest	zanimati (imp.); that interests me: to me zanima
her	njen, njezin	international	međunarodni
here	ovd(j)e, tu	to invite	pozivati (imp.), pozvati
to hide	kriti (se) (imp. krijem), sakriti (se)	jewellery	nakit
		journey	put, putovanje
hill	brdo	jumper	džemper (S); vesta (C)
to hire	iznajmljivati (imp.), iznajmiti (pf.)	key	ključ
his	njegov	kind	ljubazan
holiday	odmor	kitchen	kuhinja
to hope	nadati se (imp.)	to know	znati (imp.)
hospital	bolnica	language	jezik (tongue)
house	kuća	last	posl(j)ednji ; last year prošla godina
hot	vruć; topao,		

late	kasni (to be late: kasniti , imp. zakasniti)	to marry	ženiti se (imp.), oženiti se (of man); udavati se (imp.)
to laugh	smijati se (smijem , imp.), (S) smejati se , smejem se		udajem se , udati se (of woman)
lavatory	WC, toalet	meat	meso
to leave	(abandon) ostaviti (pf.), ostavljati ; (depart) odlaziti, otići	to meet	sresti se (pf. sretnem); naći se (pf.)
		menu	jelovnik
		moment	čas, časak
		month	m(j)esec
left (hand)	l(ij)evi	more	više
letter	pismo	morning	jutro
life	život	mother	majka
to like	voljeti (imp. volim); svidati se nekome	much	mnogo (+ G)
		my	moj
		near	blizu , as prep.: + G
to live	živjeti (imp. živim)	never	nikad
living room	dnevna soba	new	nov
little	malen, mali	newspaper	novine (pl.)
local	domaći	next	sl(ij)edeći
to look	gledati (imp.); look for tražiti (imp.), potražiti (imp.); look after čuvati (imp.) sačuvati	night	noć (f.)
		no	ne
		north	s(j)ever , s(j)everni (adj.)
		to notice	prim(ij)ećivati (imp.) prim(ij)- ećujem , prim(ij)etiti
to lose	gubiti (imp.), izgubiti		
to love	voljeti (imp. volim) to be in love biti zaljubljen	now	sad
		of course	dakako, naravno
		often	često
		old	star
lucky you!	blago vama/tebi!	on	na + P, onto na
luggage	prtljaga , (S) prtljag	our	+ A naš

outside	van, vani; (S) napolje, napolju		ostati (ostanem)
parent	roditelj	to remember	s(j)jećati se (imp., + G of thing remembered)
to park	parkirati se (imp.)		s(j)etiti se
to pay	plaćati (imp.), platiti	rest	odmor
peach	breskva	to rest	odmariti se (imp.),
perhaps	možda		odmoriti se
piece	komad (also play, drama)	to return	vraćati (se) (imp.), vratiti (se)
pillow	jastuk		desni
place	m(j)esto	righthand	r(ij)eka
to play	igrati se (imp.)	river	put, cesta
pleasant	ugodan, ugodna (esp. C; also prijatan, prijatna)	road	soba
		room	iza (ugla)
please	molim (lit.: I pray)	round (a corner)	marka
to prefer	više vol(j)eti	stamp	reći (pf., past part.: rekao, rekla), kazati (imp. kažem))
possible	moć	to say	
postcard	dopisnica; (picture)	school	škola
	razglednica	sea	more
post-office	pošta	second	drugi
probably	vjerojatno, (S) verovatno	to see	vid(j)eti (imp. and pf. vidim)
to put	stavljati (imp.) staviti	to sell	prodavati (imp. prodajem), prodati
quiet	tih		slati (imp., šaljem), poslati
rain	kiša; to rain: padati kiša	to send	polaziti (imp.), poći (pođem)
to read	čitati (imp.) pročitati	to set off	hlad
ready	gotov; spreman, spremna	shade	ona
relation	rođak, rodica; (S) rođakinja (f.)	she	košulja
		shirt	dućan,
		shop	prodavnica, (S) radnja
to remain	ostajati (imp.),		

shop window	izlog	sun	sunce
to sing	p(j)evati (imp.)	table	(C) stol , (S) sto
sister	sestra	to take	uzimati (imp.), uzeti (uzmem)
to sit (down)	s(j)esti (pf. s(j)ednem) (to be sitting) sjediti (imp.) (S) sedeti	to talk	govoriti , razgo- varati (imp.), razgovoriti
slacks	hlače (f. pl.), (S) pantalone	tea	čaj
small	malen , mali	teacher	nastavnik , profesor
to sleep	spavati (imp.)	thank you	hvala
to smoke	pušiti (imp.), popušiti	theatre	(C) kazalište , (S) pozorište
some	neki	their	njihov
someone	ne(t)ko	there	tamo
something	nešto	they	oni (m.), one (f.), ona (nt.)
somewhere	negd(j)e	thing	stvar (f.)
son	sin	to think	misliti (imp.), pomisliti
song	p(j)esma (<i>also</i> poem)	through	kroz (+ A)
soon	uskoro ; as soon as čim	tin (of food)	konzerva
to speak	govoriti (imp.)	today	danas
spring	prol(j)eće	tomorrow	sutra
to stand	stajati (imp. stajem), stati (stanem)	town	grad
station	(C) kolodvor , (S) stanica	train	(C) vlak , (S) voz
to stay (sojourn)	boraviti (imp.)	to travel	putovati (imp. putujem) noun: putovanje
stop (bus, etc.)	(C) postaja , (S) stanica	to try	probati (imp. and pf.); pokušavati (imp.), pokušati
storm	oluja	to understand	razum(ij)evati (imp.), razum(j)eti (razum(ij)em), C oni razu- miju , S oni razumeju)
straight	prav ; ravan , ravna		
soup	(C) juha , (S) supa ; thick soup: ćorba		
south	jug , južni (adj.)		
suitcase	kofer , kovčeg		
summer	l(j)eto		

unfortunately	na žalost		(ek.) beo, bela
usually	obično	who	(C) tko, (S) ko
vegetables	povrće (coll.)	why	zašto
very	jako, vrlo, veoma	wife	supruga, žena
view	pogled	wind	v(j)etar (G v(j)etra)
visit	(C) posjet, (S) poseta	window	prozor
to walk	hodati (imp.); šetati (to go for a walk) (imp.) prošetati	wine	vino
to want	žel(j)eti (imp. želim)	winter	zima
to wash	prati (imp. perem), oprati	with	s, sa (+ I)
washbasin	lavabo	without	bez (+ G)
way	način; direction put	woman	žena
we	mi	work	posao (G posla)
weather	vr(ij)eme (G vremena)	to work	raditi (imp.)
week	(C) tjedan, sedmica, (S) nedelja	world	sv(ij)et
welcome	dobro došao (došla, došli, etc.)	to write	pisati (imp. pišem), napisati
west	zapad, zapadni (adj.)	year	godina
wet	mokar, mokra	yes	da
when	kad	yesterday	(C) jučer, (S) juče
where	gd(j)e; kuda, kamo (with movement)	you	ti (familiar), vi (formal, pl.)
white	(ijek.) bijeli,	young	mlad
		your	tvoj (sg., familiar), vaš (pl., formal)
		Yugoslav	jugoslovenski; Yugoslav person: Jugosloven (m.), Jugoslovenka (C) Jugoslaven, Jugoslavenka

Subject index

The numbers refer to lessons.

- Accusative case 4
- Accusative with prepositions 4
- adjectives 6
 - Accusative, Genitive 7
 - comparative 14
 - Dative, Instrumental 8
 - Nominative 6
 - phrases expressed by verbs 18
- adjectives from proper nouns 3
 - possessive, from proper nouns 15
- adverbs 2
 - comparative 14
- apologies 3
- articles, absence of 1
- aspect 2, 18, 19
- being mistaken 2
- belonging (possession) 3
- biti** 1
- body, parts of 18
- breakdown on the road 16
- cars, preparing for journey 15
- climate 19
- clothes 4, 14
- colours 14
- coming and going 3
- commands 18
- comparative 14
 - structures with the comparative 14
- conditional 19
- countries, names of 5
- daily routine 19
- dates 13
- Dative 5
- days of the week 13
- demonstrative pronouns 15
- doctor, visit 18
- driving 15
- enclitics 1
- family relationships 10
- finding your way 8
- flats and furniture 6
- future tense 11
 - long form of the auxiliary 11
 - structures with the future 11
- food and drink 7
 - shopping for 17
- Genitive 4
- greetings 1
- hypotheses 19
- imperative 18
- Instrumental 5
- interrogative pronouns 17
- introductions 1
- itineraries 4
- letters 3, 20
- living costs 19
- location 5

- Locative, *see* Prepositional case
 lost items 17
 negative, double 3
 nationalities 1
nema 4
 Nominative 3
 nouns 3
 numbers
 cardinal 12
 ordinal 13
 ordering meals 7
 participles 20
 past tense 9
 negative 9
 questions 9
 personal pronouns 1
 declensions 10
 emphatic use 9
 use of Dative to express
 possession 10
 places
 going to, coming from 4
 in front, behind, etc. 8
 police station 17
 possessive pronouns 16
 Prepositional case 5
 prepositions 4
 with Accusative 4
 with Instrumental 8
 pronouns
 demonstrative 15
 interrogative 17
 personal 1
 possessive 16
 relative 17
 questions 1
 reflexive verbs 2, 8
 reflexive phrases 19
 relative pronouns 17
 shopping
 for food 17
 superlative 14
 telephone conversations 4, 5, 12
 tenses
 future 11
 other: future perfect, pluperfect,
 aorist 20
 past 9
 time 13
 verbal nouns 20
 verbs 2, App.
 use of verbs with numbers 12
 weather 19
 Vocative 3
 word families 1
 word order 1, 9, 10, 20

Cassettes
available

Uz-Translations

COLLOQUIAL
CROATIAN
AND
SERBIAN

COLLOQUIAL CROATIAN AND SERBIAN is easy to use and completely up to date!

Specially written by an experienced teacher for self-study or class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Croatian and Serbian, the language which is also spoken in Bosnia and Montenegro. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes **COLLOQUIAL CROATIAN AND SERBIAN** your best choice in personal language learning?

- **interactive** – lots of exercises for regular practice
- **clear** – concise grammar notes
- **practical** – useful vocabulary and pronunciation guide
- **complete** – including answer key and reference section

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in Croatian and Serbian in a broad range of everyday situations.

Two 60-minute cassettes are available to accompany **COLLOQUIAL CROATIAN AND SERBIAN**. Recorded by native speakers, these cassettes can be used on any audio system and complement the book, helping you with pronunciation and listening skills.

Cover photograph: Courtesy of the Robert Harding Picture Library.

Routledge
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE
29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001
www.routledge.com

Printed in Great Britain